Introduction to the guidelines

UCSF Transgender Care at the University of California - San Francisco is proud to present these *Guidelines for the Primary and Gender-Affirming Care of Transgender and Gender Nonbinary People*. Transgender people have a gender identity that differs from the sex which they were assigned at birth, and are estimated to represent 0.5% of the U.S. population.[1] Numerous needs assessments have demonstrated that transgender people encounter a range of barriers to accessing primary health care. A 2006 survey of more than 600 transgender people in California found that 30% postponed seeking medical care due to prior disrespect or discrimination, and that 10% were primary care outright.[2] The 2011 National Transgender Discrimination Survey of more than 6000 transgender people in all 50 U.S. states found several noteworthy disparities, including 28% who delayed care due to past discrimination and 19% who were denied care outright. Most alarmingly, 50% of respondents reported having to teach their providers about their own healthcare.[3]

These guidelines aim to address these disparities by equipping primary care providers and health systems with the tools and knowledge to meet the health care needs of their transgender and gender nonconforming patients. These guidelines expand on the original UCSF Primary Care Protocol for Transgender Care, which since its launch in 2011 has served thousands of providers and policymakers across the U.S. and around the world; the page on hormone administration alone received more than 5000 visitors in the month of November, 2015. These Guidelines complement the existing World Professional Association for Transgender Health Standards of Care and the Endocrine Society Guidelines in that they are specifically designed for implementation in every day evidence-based primary care, including settings with limited resources.[4,5]

The overall structure and list of topics for inclusion were developed in consultation with a Medical Advisory Board (MAB), a diverse group of expert clinicians from a variety of academic and community based settings. Also contributing to the overall design and structure was a review of the range of consultation requests received since the 2011 launch of the original Protocol. The guidelines were then written using an authorship – peer review approach. Primary authors from both within and outside the MAB were invited for individual topics, after which a peer review and modified consensus process was used to arrive at the final guidelines presented here. The diverse authorship allows the development of a broadly applicable document, rather than one that solely reflects the practice at a single academic medical center, such as UCSF.

These guidelines would not be possible without the contributions of our Medical Advisory Board and other authors and reviewers, as well as the support of JoAnne Keatley, MSW and E. Michael Reyes, MD, MPH, as well as Lissa Moran who assisted immensely with literature

reviews, bibliography management, version control, copy editing, formatting, and compiling peer reviewer comments. Ben Zovod also assisted with literature reviews, bibliography management, and compiling peer reviewer comments. Their dedication and hours of hard work has resulted in a final product that is relevant, broadly applicable, evidence based, and scientifically sound. I hope you find these guidelines useful and welcome any feedback or questions, which are helpful in framing future revisions. Thank you for caring about the health of transgender and gender nonconforming people.

Madeline B. Deutsch, MD, MPH
Editor; *Guidelines for the Primary and Gender-Affirming Care of Transgender and Gender Nonbinary People*
Medical Director, UCSF Transgender Care
Associate Professor of Clinical Family and Community Medicine; University of California, San Francisco; Department of Family and Community Medicine
Madeline.Deutsch@ucsf.edu(link sends e-mail)

References

1. Conron KJ, Scott G, Stowell GS, Landers SJ. Transgender Health in Massachusetts: Results From a Household Probability Sample of Adults. Am J Public Health. 2012 Jan;102(1):118–22.
2. The State of Transgender California(link is external) [Internet]. Transgender Law Center. [cited 2013 Apr 1]. Available from: http://transgenderlawcenter.org/pubs/the-state-of-transgender-california(link is external)
3. Grant JM, Mottet LA, Tanis J, Harrison J, Herman J, Keisling M. Injustice at every turn: a report of the National Transgender Discrimination Survey(link is external) [Internet]. National Center for Transgender Equality and National Gay and Lesbian Task Force; 2011 [cited 2016 Mar 17].
4. Coleman E, Bockting W, Botzer M, Cohen-Kettenis P, DeCuypere G, Feldman J, et al. Standards of Care for the Health of Transsexual, Transgender, and Gender-Nonconforming People, Version 7. Int J Transgenderism. 2012;13(4):165–232.
5. Hembree WC, Cohen-Kettenis P, Delemarre-van de Waal HA, Gooren LJ, Meyer WJ 3rd, Spack NP, et al. Endocrine treatment of transsexual persons: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2009 Sep;94(9):3132–54.

Clinic Environment

Transgender people may avoid seeking care due to prior discrimination or disrespect in a clinic setting.[1,2] Providing a safe, welcoming and culturally appropriate clinic environment is essential to insure that transgender people not only seek care, but return for follow-up. There are several key components to creating an appropriate setting for transgender care.

Cultural humility: is a concept through which individuals recognize that their own experiences or identities may not project onto the experiences or identities of others. Each patient should be approached as an individual with no preconceptions. Individual preferences of terminology, complex or novel gender identities, and differing desires for gender affirming treatments will be encountered daily in the clinic. Meeting patients "where they are" without judgment or editorializing (including in some cases, even positive remarks about appearance) will enhance the patient-provider relationship and avoids the perception of stigma or pathologization. While some patients may be empowered by serving as a source of information for medical providers,[3] others may be uncomfortable doing so. It should not be routinely expected that patients explicitly "teach" their providers, and providers should limit historical questions to those that are relevant to the current visit or problem.

Staff training: In addition to healthcare providers, front desk staff, nursing staff, lab and x-ray staff, etc. are often on the front lines of patient care. Training on transgender health issues should be provided to all clinic staff and providers, and should be integrated into the standard hiring and on-boarding process for all employees.

Waiting areas: should include transgender-themed posters, artwork, pamphlets, magazines, etc. to indicate a commitment to serving the transgender community.

Bathroom: policies should either define all bathrooms as gender-neutral, or specifically state that patients may choose either the women's or men's rooms based on their own preference. In this latter case, making at least one gender-neutral bathroom available will provide a safe space for nonbinary people as well as for those in transition and who feel uncomfortable in any gendered space.

Fluency of terminology: Providers should be aware of basic terminology used by the trans community. In addition to the terminology described in these guidelines (which are based on North American English language use), other local or individual terms may exist and also may change over time. Terminology in other countries or languages may vary. Providers should familiarize themselves with local terminology, and approach individuals with cultural humility when determining which specific terms to use.

Gender identity data: includes chosen name, chosen pronouns, current gender identity, and sex listed on original birth certificate. Failure to collect and use gender identity data has several important repercussions, including invisibility of gender and sexual minority populations to policy makers and researchers,[4] difficulties in tracking the organ inventories and preventive health needs of transgender people,[5] and reduced patient satisfaction due to a failure to use chosen names and pronouns.[6] Gender identity data have been added to the requirements for the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services Office of the National Coordinator for Health Information Technology Meaningful Use Stage 3 guidelines.[7]

The UCSF Center of Excellence for Transgender Health, Fenway Health in Boston, University of California, Davis, the Mayo Clinic, the U.S. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC), and many other organizations and experts advocate for the use of the "two-step" method for the collection of gender identity data. This method queries both gender identity as well as the sex listed on one's original birth certificate; transgender people can be identified as those whose gender identity differs from their birth sex. This method has been found to be superior to a single question querying gender/sex with choices of "male," "female," and "transgender," since some transgender people may choose "male" or "female,"resulting in effective invisibility of their transgender status.[8]

Unfortunately many EMR vendors have lagged in developing functionality for gender identity data, resulting in a patchwork of practices and locations in which these data are stored within the record.[9] In addition to gender identity and birth sex, transgender people may also have a chosen name which differs from their legal name, and may use pronouns which differ from those associated with the legal sex listed on their identity documents. As such it is also recommended that EMRs contain functionality for the recording of chosen name and pronoun. An ideal EMR will then allow chosen name and pronoun to be displayed for all users in all views. Furthermore, EMRs there should include functionality to remove indicators of transgender status from the view of casual users once legal documents have been changed to reflect gender identity and chosen name, allowing transgender people to maintain privacy. Specific details regarding one's transgender status and transition history, including an inventory of organs and information on hormone use can be stored in the medical and surgical history sections of the chart.[6]

Recommended terminology for the collection of gender identity data is listed below.[10] Clinics can integrate these questions into their intake forms or processes by including a brief description or disclaimer to avoid confusing those patients to whom these questions do not apply.

Gender identity (two-step):

1. **What is your gender identity?**
   ☐ Male
   ☐ Female
   ☐ Transgender man / Transman
   ☐ Transgender woman / Transwoman
   ☐ Genderqueer / Gender nonconforming
   Additional identity (fill in) _____
   ☐ Decline to state

2. **What sex were you assigned at birth?**
   ☐ Male
   ☐ Female
   ☐ Decline to state

Physical Examination

Physical examination should be relevant to the anatomy that is present, regardless of gender presentation, and without assumptions as to anatomy or identity. Sensitive history taking is required to understand the myriad and individualized changes and characteristics in the context of hormone administration and surgical intervention. Consideration should be given throughout the visit to potential prior negative experiences within the health care setting, including discrimination as well as physical or emotional abuse.[1]

When conducting a physical exam, providers should use a gender affirming approach. Gender affirmation is when an individual is affirmed in their gender identity through social interactions.[2] This includes being referred to by the correct name and pronouns during the entire visit. This may also include using general terminology for body parts, or asking patients if they have a preferred term to be used.[3] An examination should only be performed of those body parts that pertain to the reason for a specific visit. For example, examination of the genitalia is not appropriate in the context of an acute visit for an upper respiratory infection.

Secondary sex characteristics may present on a spectrum of development in patients undergoing hormone therapy, to some degree dependent on duration of hormone use and age of initiation. Transgender men may have facial and body hair growth, clitoromegaly, increased muscle mass, masculine fat redistribution, androgenic alopecia, and acne. Transgender women may have breast development (often underdeveloped), feminine fat redistribution, reduced muscle mass, thinned or absent body hair, thinned or absent facial hair, softened, thinner skin, and testicles that have decreased in size or completely

retract.[4] Patients who have undergone gender affirming surgeries may have varying physical exam findings depending on the procedures performed, approaches used, and occurrence of complications. Providers should maintain an organ inventory to guide screening and management of certain specific complaints.

Special considerations for a vaginal exam in transgender women

(See also guidelines for sexually transmitted infections, and for vaginoplasty)

The anatomy of a neovagina created in a transgender woman differs from a natal vagina in that it is a blind cuff, lacks a cervix or surrounding fornices, and may have a more posterior orientation. As such using an anoscope may be a more anatomically appropriate approach for a visual examination. The anoscope can be inserted, the trocar removed, and the vaginal walls visualized collapsing around the end of the anoscope as it is withdrawn.

Special considerations for conducting a pelvic examination with transgender men

(See also guidelines for sexually transmitted infections, and for cervical cancer screening

The pelvic exam may be a traumatic and anxiety inducing procedure for transgender men and other trans-masculine persons. Transgender men are less likely to be up to date on cervical cancer screenings [5] and have a higher rate of inadequate cytologic sampling.[6] It is essential to make clear to the laboratory that the sample being provided is indeed a cervical pap smear (especially if the listed gender marker is "male") to avoid the sample being run incorrectly as an anal pap, or discarded. The use of testosterone or presence of amenorrhea should be indicated on the requisition.

Should the individual express distress or concern about the examination, it may be deferred until a later date once a trusting relationship has been developed. A website with further details on pelvic examinations and screening can be found at checkitoutguys.ca(link is external).[7] Various techniques can be used to make a pelvic examination (including bimanual and/or speculum exam) less uncomfortable

- Discuss procedures with the patient beforehand, including the order in which steps will occur. Allow time for the patient to express any concerns prior to beginning the exam.
- Allow the patient to have a support person in the room, listen to music on headphones, or utilize any other strategies they may have to provide distraction during the exam.
- Explain each step in a clear a direct way throughout, such as saying: "I will touch with my hand now," "you will experience some pressure next," "you will hear the

clicking noise of the speculum now," and reminding the patient that the exam can be stopped at any time at their request.

- Avoid using medical terms for body parts, unless discussed beforehand that these are preferred terms the patient would like you to use. Some patients may prefer to refer to their vagina as their "front" or "front-hole."
- Offer the use of a mirror to allow the patient to directly observe the exam.
- Administration of an oral benzodiazepine 20-60 minutes prior to the exam may be helpful for those with severe anxiety.
- Administration of vaginal estrogens commonly used in menopausal management for 1-2 weeks prior to the exam may decrease the vaginal atrophy often seen with testosterone therapy.
- Allowing for self-collection of some tests may preclude the need for a speculum exam in certain scenarios, such as a swab for wet prep to analyze abnormal vaginal discharge. Specimen self-collection for HPV testing is currently under investigation.
- In the case of refusal of a speculum exam, consider offering an external and/or bimanual exam as an initial step toward establishing comfort and trust. A positive experience may lead to the patient considering further examinations in the future.

Other special considerations

Binding of the chest to create a masculine appearance may lead to skin breakdown or other complications of the skin. Patients may be hesitant to remove the binder for a physical exam.[3] Appropriate and sensitive history taking and education about safe binding is recommended for all trans male patients.[8]

Tucking of the testicles and penis may lead to hernias or other complications at the external inguinal ring or skin breakdown at the perineum. Thorough and sensitive history and education is recommended for all trans women.[8]

When appropriate and indicated, findings suggestive of intersex conditions should be further evaluated.[4]

Gender-Affirming Overview

Supporting evidence for providing gender-affirming treatments and procedures

Transgender people may seek any one of a number of gender-affirming interventions, including hormone therapy, surgery, facial hair removal, interventions for the modification of speech and communication, and behavioral adaptations such as genital tucking or

packing, or chest binding. All of these procedures have been defined as medically necessary by the World Professional Association for Transgender Health.[1] Lower quality research has found improvements in a range of psychosocial measures after gender-affirming treatments such as hormones or surgery.[2-5] Sevelius' Model of Gender Affirmation describes the ways in which denial of access to gender affirmation is associated with high risk behaviors and increased rates of HIV infection.[6] Conversely, not all transgender people seek all interventions, and some may seek none. In contrast to past practices in which a set pathway involved a requirement of psychological assessment → hormones → genital surgery, the current standard of care is to allow each transgender person to seek only those interventions which they desire to affirm their own gender identity.[7]

Medical interventions

Gender-affirming hormone therapy is the primary medical intervention sought by transgender people. Such treatment allows the acquisition of secondary sex characteristics more aligned with an individual's gender identity.

Surgical interventions

A wide range of gender-affirming surgeries are available to transgender people. These include surgeries specific to gender affirmation, as well as procedures commonly performed in non-transgender populations.

Surgeries specific to transgender populations:

- Feminizing vaginoplasty
- Masculinizing phalloplasty / scrotoplasty
- Metoidioplasty (clitoral release/enlargement, may include urethral lengthening
- Masculinizing chest surgery ("top" surgery)
- Facial feminization procedures
- Reduction thyrochondroplasty (tracheal cartilage shave)
- Voice surgery

Surgeries not specific to transgender populations:

- Augmentation mammoplasty
- Hysterectomy / oophorectomy

- Orchiectomy
- Vaginectomy

Other interventions:

Other interventions include:

- Facial hair removal
- Voice modification
- Genital tucking and packing, and chest binding

References

1. WPATH Clarification on Medical Necessity of Treatment, Sex Reassignment, and Insurance Coverage for Transgender and Transsexual People Worldwide WPATH(link is external). Transgender Health Information Program. [cited 2014 Jan 21].
2. Gómez-Gil E, Zubiaurre-Elorza L, Esteva I, Guillamon A, Godás T, Cruz Almaraz M, et al. Hormone-treated transsexuals report less social distress, anxiety and depression. Psychoneuroendocrinology. 2012 May;37(5):662-70.
3. Meier SLC, Fitzgerald KM, Pardo ST, Babcock J. The effects of hormonal gender affirmation treatment on mental health in female-to-male transsexuals. J Gay Lesbian Ment Health. 2011;15(3):281-99.
4. Newfield E, Hart S, Dibble S, Kohler L. Female-to-male transgender quality of life. Qual Life Res. 2006 Jun 7;15(9):1447-57.
5. White Hughto JM, Reisner SL. A systematic review of the effects of hormone therapy on psychological functioning and quality of life in transgender individuals. Transgender Health. 2016 Jan 13;1(1):21-31.
6. Sevelius JM. Gender Affirmation: A framework for conceptualizing risk behavior among transgender women of color. Sex Roles. 2013 Jun 1;68(11-12):675-89.
7. Coleman E, Bockting W, Botzer M, Cohen-Kettenis P, DeCuypere G, Feldman J, et al. Standards of Care for the Health of Transsexual, Transgender, and Gender-Nonconforming People, Version 7. Int J Transgenderism. 2012;13(4):165-232.

Initiating Hormone Therapy

Assessing readiness and appropriateness

While historically a "referral letter" from a mental health professional was required prior to initiation of hormone therapy, many large volume and experienced providers of transgender care have for years used an "informed consent" pathway to hormone initiation. WPATH(link is external) Standards of Care, Seventh Version recognizes both of these pathways to the initiation of gender affirming hormone therapy as valid. Medical providers who feel comfortable making an assessment and diagnosis of gender dysphoria, as well as assessing for capacity to provide informed consent (able to understand risks, benefits, alternatives, unknowns, limitations, risks of no treatment) are able to initiate gender affirming hormones without a prior assessment or referral from a mental health provider.[1] A study of the practices of 12 such clinics in a diversity of settings found minimal risk of regret and no known cases of malpractice suits.[2] More detail on assessing readiness and appropriateness for various gender affirming treatments can be found in the topic on mental health.

Qualifications of the prescribing provider

Prescribing gender affirming hormones is well within the scope of a range of medical providers, including primary care physicians, obstetricians-gynecologists, and endocrinologists, advanced practice nurses, and physician assistants.[1] Depending on the practice setting and juris diction, other providers with prescriptive rights (naturopathic providers, nurse midwives) may also be appropriate to prescribe and manage this care. Most medications used in gender affirming hormone therapy are commonly used substances with which most prescribers are already familiar due to their use in the management of menopause, contraception, hirsutism, male pattern baldness, prostatism, or abnormal uterine bleeding.

Feminizing Hormone Therapy

Introduction

The goal of feminizing hormone therapy is the development of female secondary sex characteristics, and suppression/minimization of male secondary sex characteristics. General effects include breast development (usually to Tanner stage 2 or 3), a redistribution of facial and body subcutaneous fat, reduction of muscle mass, reduction of body hair (and to a lesser extent, facial hair), change in sweat and odor patterns, and arrest and possible reversal of scalp hair loss. Sexual and gonadal effects include reduction in erectile function, changes in libido, reduced or absent sperm count and ejaculatory fluid, and reduced testicular size. Feminizing hormone therapy also brings about changes in emotional and social functioning. The general approach of therapy is to combine an estrogen with an androgen blocker, and in some cases a progestogen.

Estrogens

The primary class of estrogen used for feminizing therapy is *17-beta estradiol*, which is a "bioidentical" hormone in that it is chemically identical to that from a human ovary. The general approach is similar to estrogen replacement in agonadal (i.e., Turner syndrome) or menopausal states, with some dosing modifications. 17-beta estradiol (or simply estradiol) is most commonly delivered to transgender women via a transdermal patch, oral tablet, or injection of a conjugated ester (estradiol valerate or estradiol cypionate). No outcome studies have been conducted on injectable estradiol valerate or cypionate, presumably due to their uncommon modern use outside of transgender care settings; due to this limited use, manufacturers have little incentive to produce this medicine, and shortages have been reported. Other delivery routes for estradiol such as transdermal gel or spray are formulated for the treatment of menopausal vasomotor symptoms and while convenient and effective in some transgender women, in others these routes may not be able to achieve blood levels in the physiologic female range. Compounded topical creams and gels also exist from specialty pharmacies; if these are to be used it is recommended that the prescriber consult with the compounding pharmacist to understand the specific details and dosing of the individual preparation. Compounded estradiol valerate or cypionate for injection also exists, and may be an alternative in times of shortage or more cost effective for those who must pay cash for their prescriptions.

Conjugated equine estrogens (Premarin®) have been used in the past but are not recommended for a number of reasons, including inability to accurately measure blood levels and some suggestion of increased thrombogenicity and cardiovascular risk.[1,2] Equine estrogens are obtained from the urine of pregnant, catheterized horses; no evidence exists to suggest that these estrogens are superior to bioidentical human estradiol. Ethical concerns have been raised regarding the methods of production of equine estrogens(link is external). Ethinyl estradiol is a synthetic estrogen used in contraceptive preparations and is associated with an increased thrombotic risk.[3,4] In the context of contraception, ethinyl estradiol has more consistent and reliable cycle control and as such is better tolerated, balancing out the potentially increased risk of VTE.[5] **In the setting of gender affirmation there is no need for cycle or bleeding regulation, and thus the use of ethinyl estradiol and its inherent risks are not warranted (Grading: T O S)**.

Side effects of estrogens may include migraines, mood swings, hot flashes, and weight gain.

Antiandrogens - common approaches

Suppression of testosterone production and blocking of its effects contributes to the suppression / minimization of male secondary sexual characteristics. Unfortunately, many of these characteristics are permanent upon completion of natal puberty and are irreversible. Androgen blockers allow the use of lower estradiol dosing, in contrast to the supraphysiologic estrogen levels (and associated risks) previously used to affect pituitary gonadotropin suppression.[6]

Spironolactone is the most commonly used androgen blocker in the U.S. Spironolactone is a potassium sparing diuretic, which in higher doses also has direct anti-androgen receptor activity as well as a suppressive effect on testosterone synthesis.[6] Doses of 200mg daily in non-transgender women being treated for hair loss have been described as safe, though doses of up to 400mg/day have been reported without negative effect.[7] Hyperkalemia is the most serious risk but is very uncommon when precaution is taken to avoid use in individuals with renal insufficiency, and use with caution and frequent monitoring in those on ACE inhibitor or ARB type medications. Due to its diuretic effect, patients may experience self-limited polyuria, polydipsia, or orthostasis.

5-alpha reductase inhibitors include finasteride and dutasteride. Finasteride blocks 5-alpha reductase type 2 and 3 mediated conversion of testosterone to the potent androgen dihydrotestosterone.[8] Finasteride 1mg daily is FDA-approved for male pattern baldness, while the 5mg dose is approved for management of prostatic hypertrophy.[9] Dutasteride 0.5mg more effectively blocks the type 1 isozyme, which is present in the pilosebaceous unit and therefore may have more dramatic feminizing effects. Since these medications block neither the production nor action of testosterone, their antiandrogen effect is less than that encountered with full blockade. 5-alpha reductase inhibitors may be a good choice for those unable to tolerate, or with contraindications to the use of spironolactone. 5-alpha reductase inhibitors may also be an option for use as a single agent in patients seeking partial feminization, or for those who continue to exhibit virilized features or hair loss after complete androgen blockade or orchiectomy.

Antiandrogens - other approaches

Antiandrogens can also be used alone to bring reduced masculinization and minimal breast development, or in those patients who wish to first explore reduced testosterone levels alone, or in those with contraindications to estrogen therapy. In the absence of estrogen replacement, some patients may have unpleasant symptoms of hot flashes and low mood or energy. Long term full androgen blockade without hormone replacement in men who have undergone treatment for prostate cancer results in bone loss, and this effect would also be expected to occur in transgender individuals.[10] **In addition to titrating dosing to both clinical effect and testosterone levels as guided by patient**

goals, monitoring hormone levels to insure suppressed gonadotropins (luteinizing hormone [LH] and follicle stimulating hormone [FSH]) levels may serve as a surrogate marker to indicate adequate sex hormone levels for maintaining bone density in such patients (Grading: T O W).[11]

In many countries, *cyproterone acetate*, a synthetic progestogen with strong anti-androgen activity is commonly used. Cyproterone has been associated with uncommon episodes of fulminant hepatitis.[12] Bicalutamide, a direct anti-androgen used for the treatment of prostate cancer, also has a small but not fully quantified risk of liver function abnormalities (including several cases of fulminant hepatitis); while such risks are acceptable when considering the benefits of bicalutamide in the management of prostate cancer, such risks are less justified in the context of gender affirming treatment.[13] No evidence at present exists to inform such an analysis.

In some patients, complete androgen blockade may be difficult or even impossible using standard regimens. In cases of persistent elevations of testosterone in the setting of maximal antiandrogen dosing with good medication adherence, autonomous endogenous production (i.e. tumor) as well as undisclosed exogenous testosterone (i.e. to maintain erectile function) should be considered. An evaluation for testicular neoplasms should be performed with a scrotal exam as well as testing for elevated serum human choriogonadotropin (hCG), lactate dehydrogenase (LDH), alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) levels, and possibly scrotal imaging.[14] Once these causes have been ruled out, additional options can include gonadotropin releasing hormone analogues (GnRH) or orchiectomy. GnRH analogs are used routinely in the care of peripubertal transgender youth who require pubertal delay,[15] and have been described in the care of transgender adults as well.[16] Drawbacks to the use of GnRH analogs is primarily related to cost and difficulties in obtaining insurance coverage, as well as the need for either repeated injections, multiple daily nasal sprays, or surgical implantation. Orchiectomy may represent an ideal option in transgender women who do not desire to retain their gonads; this brief, inexpensive, outpatient procedure requires only several days for recovery and does not preclude future vaginoplasty.

Progestogens: There have been no well-designed studies of the role of progestogens in feminizing hormone regimens. Many transgender women and providers alike report an anecdotal improved breast and/or areolar development, mood, or libido with the use of progestogens.[17,18] There is no evidence to suggest that using progestogens in the setting of transgender care are harmful. In reality some patients may respond favorably to progestogens while others may find negative effects on mood. While progestogens have some anti-androgen effect through central blockade of gonadotropins, there is also a

theoretical risk of a direct androgenizing effect of progestogens. This class includes micronized bioidentical progesterone (Prometrium) as well as a number of synthetic progestins. The most commonly used synthetic progestin in the context of transgender care is the oral medroxyprogesterone acetate (Provera).

While concerns exist from the Women's Health Initiative (WHI) regarding risks of cardiovascular disease and breast cancer in the setting of medroxyprogesterone use, these concerns likely do not apply in the context of transgender care for several reasons. First, the transgender women may be at lower risk of breast cancer than non-transgender women. Second, this arm of the WHI involved the use of conjugated equine estrogens in combination with medroxyprogesterone in a sample of menopausal women, some of whom were as long as 10 years post-menopausal at the time of hormone initiation. Third, while statistically significant, the clinical significance of the findings in the WHI was subtle at best. The study aimed to evaluate the role of menopausal hormone therapy in the prevention of chronic disease. The actual findings in the conjugated equine estrogen plus medroxyprogesterone group were an excess absolute risk per 10 000 person-years of 7 more cardiac events, 8 more strokes, 8 more pulmonary emboli, and 8 more invasive breast cancers, with no change in overall mortality.[19] As such this arm of the WHI was stopped early, and it was concluded that combined menopausal hormone therapy is not indicated for prevention of chronic disease.

In the setting of gender affirming care, there are numerous differences to the findings of the WHI: populations tend to be younger, equine estrogens are not used, and the emphasis is on gender affirming interventions which have numerous benefits on mental health and quality of life, rather than prevention. **Considering these differences in demographics and goals of therapy, extremely modest increase in overall risk, and lack of difference in mortality, as well as more recent reassuring data with other forms of estrogen, the risks of using progestogens in transgender women are likely minimal or even absent (Grading: NT O M)**. Injected depo-medroxyprogesterone acetate (Depo-Provera®) is less commonly used in transgender women. Other synthetic progestins may be used as necessitated by formulary limitations; some evidence suggests that norpregnane-derived progestins (norethindrone, norgestrel) may have an increased risk of venous thromboembolism.[20]

Table 1. Estrogen preparations and dosing (Grading: T O M)

Hormone	Initial-low[b]	Initial	Maximum[c]	Comments
a. Available as standard U.S. Pharmacopeia (USP) as well as compounded products b. Initial-low dosing for those who desire (or require due to medical history) a low dose or slow upw c. Maximal effect does not necessarily require maximal dosing; as such maximal doses do not nece represent a target or ideal dose. Dose increases should be based on patient response and monit levels.				
Estradiol oral	1mg/day	2-4mg/day	8mg/day	if >2mg recommend divide
Estradiol transdermal	50mcg	100mcg	100-400 mcg	Max single patch dose avail Frequency of change is bra dependent. More than 2 pa may be cumbersome for pa
Estradiol valerate IM/SQ[a]	3mg q wk	5mg q wk	20mg q wk	May divide dose into weekl cyclical symptoms
Estradiol cypionate IM/SQ	1mg q wk	2mg q wk	5mg q wk	May divide dose into weekl cyclical symptoms

Table 2. Progestogen preparations and dosing (Grading: T O M)

Hormone	Initial-low[b]	Initial	Maximun
a. Available as standard U.S. Pharmacopeia (USP) as well as compounded products			

Table 1. Estrogen preparations and dosing (Grading: T O M)

Hormone	Initial-low[b]	Initial	Maximum[c]	Comments
b. Initial-low dosing for those who desire (or require due to medical history) a low dose or slow upw				
c. Maximal effect does not necessarily require maximal dosing; as such maximal doses do not nece represent a target or ideal dose. Dose increases should be based on patient response and monit levels.				
Medroxyprogesterone acetate (Provera)		2.5mg qhs		5-10mg q
Micronized progesterone				100-200m

Table 3. Androgen blocker preparations and dosing (Grading: T O M)

Hormone	Initial-low[b]	Initial	Maximum
a. Available as standard U.S. Pharmacopeia (USP) as well as compounded products			
b. Initial-low dosing for those who desire (or require due to medical history) a low dose or slow upw			
c. Maximal effect does not necessarily require maximal dosing; as such maximal doses do not nece represent a target or ideal dose. Dose increases should be based on patient response and monit levels.			
Spironolactone	25mg qd	50mg bid	200mg bid
Finasteride	1mg qd		5mg qd

Table 3. Androgen blocker preparations and dosing (Grading: T O M)

Hormone	Initial-low[b]	Initial	Maximum
Dutasteride			0.5mg qd

Table 4. Laboratory monitoring for feminizing hormone therapy

Test	Comments	Baseline	3 months*	6 months*	12 months*
* In first year of therapy only ** Used to calculate bioavailable testosterone(link is external); monitoring bioavailable testosterone is c may be helpful in complex cases (see text)					
BUN/Cr/K+	Only if spiro used	X	X	X	X
Lipids	No evidence to support monitoring at any time; use clinician discretion	Based on USPSTF guidelines			
A1c or glucose	No evidence to support monitoring at any time; use clinician discretion	Based on USPSTF guidelines			

Table 4. Laboratory monitoring for feminizing hormone therapy

Test	Comments	Baseline	3 months*	6 months*	12 months*
Estradiol			X	X	
Total Testosterone			X	X	X
Sex Hormone Binding Globulin (SHBG)**			PRN		
Albumin**			PRN		
Prolactin	Only if symptoms of prolactinoma				

Overview of titration and monitoring

The interpretation of hormone levels for transgender individuals is not yet evidence based; physiologic hormone levels in non-transgender people are used as reference ranges. However, estrogen levels in non-transgender women may not be associated with specific secondary sex characteristics (i.e. higher estrogen levels in non-transgender women are not necessarily associated with larger breasts), and specific phenotypical end points are likely multifactorial and particularly dependent on genetics and the age at which gender affirming hormone therapy is begun. Titration upwards of dose should be driven by patient goals, in the context of clinical response, hormone level monitoring, and safety monitoring (e.g. presence of risk factors such as smoking, renal function and K+ in patients using spironolactone). A general approach for titration would include increasing of both estrogen and antiandrogen dosing until the estrogen dose is in the female physiologic range. Once this has been achieved, titration efforts can focus on increasing androgen blockade. There

can be several approaches to titration of androgens. One approach is to continue increasing estrogen until it reaches the upper limit of the female physiologic range. The drawback for this approach is that patients may begin to experience estrogenic side effects as described below. Another approach is to maintain current physiologic estrogen dosing and titrate upward on antiandrogens and/or addition of a progestogen.

Some providers choose to omit the use of hormone level testing and only monitor for clinical progress or changes. The risk of this approach is that if hormone levels (particularly testosterone) have not reached the target range, but progress is judged as appropriate based on clinical exam, a suboptimal degree of feminization is possible, and the presence of supraphysiologic levels would also be obscured. Conversely, Endocrine Society guidelines recommend monitoring of hormone levels every 3 months.[21] In practice this is not realistic and not likely to add value once a stable dosing has been achieved. A prospective study of transgender women taking 4mg/day divided dose oral estradiol or 100mcg transdermal estradiol, plus 100-200mg/day divided dose spironolactone found that all women achieved physiologic estradiol levels, though only 2/3 of the women achieved female range testosterone levels.[22] Some gender-nonconforming/nonbinary patients may prefer to maintain estradiol or testosterone levels in an intermediate range. Regardless of initial dosing scheme chosen, dosing may be titrated upwards over 3-6 months. Check estradiol and testosterone levels at 3 and 6 months and titrate dose accordingly. For those patients using spironolactone, check renal function and K+ at 3 months and 6 months, then q 6-12 months. While laboratory monitoring of hormone levels may seem complex, it is of similar difficulty to the monitoring of other similarly complex lab-monitored conditions managed by primary care providers, such as thyroid disorders, anticoagulation, or diabetes.

Once hormone levels have reached the target range for a specific patient, it is reasonable to monitor levels yearly, or only as needed as described below. As with other situations involving maintenance of hormone therapy (menopause, contraception), annual visits are sufficient for transgender women on a stable hormone regimen. Other reasons for measuring hormone levels in the maintenance phase include significant metabolic shifts such as the onset of diabetes or a thyroid disorder, substantial weight changes, subjective or objective evidence of virilization, or new symptoms potentially precipitated or exacerbated by hormone imbalances such as hot flashes or migraines. Such patients may also require more frequent office visits to manage coexisting conditions. Increased frequency of office visits may also be useful for patients with complex psychosocial situations to allow for the provision of ancillary or wraparound services.

Current Endocrine Society recommendations include the measurement of only total testosterone and estradiol. This is consistent with Endocrine Society recommendations that only total testosterone be monitored in non-transgender men being managed for testosterone deficiency, except in cases of borderline testosterone levels. However, since testosterone is of particular concern is insuring maximal feminization, the calculation of bioavailable testosterone in transgender women may still be of value. Specifically, exogenous estrogens (especially oral) may be associated with elevated levels of sex hormone binding globulin (SHBG); such elevations can vary from person to person and across regimens. As such in cases of patient concern or persistent virilized features in the presence of a female-range total testosterone, calculation of the bioavailable testosterone may help fine tune hormone regimens for optimal effect.

Interpretation of laboratory results requires special attention in the context of transgender care. Numerous sources publish target ranges for serum estradiol, total estrogens, free, total and bioidentical testosterone, and sex hormone binding globulin. However, these specific ranges may vary between different laboratories and techniques. Furthermore, the interpretation of reference ranges supplied with lab result reports may not be applicable if the patient is registered under a gender that differs from their intended hormonal sex. For example, a transgender woman who is still registered as male will result in lab reference ranges reported for a male; clearly these ranges are not applicable for a transgender woman using feminizing hormone therapy. Hormone levels for genderqueer or gender nonconforming/nonbinary patients may intentionally lie in the mid-range between male and female norms. Providers are encouraged to consult with their local lab(s) to obtain hormone level reference ranges for both 'male' and 'female' norms, and then apply the correct range when interpreting results based on the current hormonal sex, rather than the sex of registration.

Monitoring estradiol levels

Historically estrogen levels have been monitored using the total serum estradiol. The 2009 Endocrine Society Guidelines recommend monitoring serum estradiol and maintaining levels at the mid-cycle range for non-transgender women.[21] This recommendation is based on expert opinion only and may be overly conservative, and hormone levels are often not easy to tightly control.[23] Providers are encouraged to review the specific estradiol reference ranges for their local lab estradiol assays, as these can vary. There is no evidence that higher estradiol levels in patients with adequate androgen suppression results in additional feminization or breast development. Maintaining estrogen levels in the physiologic range for menstruating non-transgender women minimizes risks and side effects, and makes sense clinically. Note that the use of conjugated estrogens (Premarin®)

or ethinyl estradiol (found in most combined oral contraceptives) are not accurately measured by estradiol assays and will typically result in low measured levels.

In patients who have been using self-administered conjugated estrogens, or ethinyl estradiol, it is reasonable to check a total estrogens level, which may provide a more accurate estimate in these cases. This assay also measures minor estrogens such as estriol and estrone. There is some evidence that the use of oral estradiol results in higher serum levels of estrone due to first pass hepatic metabolism, as compared to parenteral forms.[24,25] This may explain dose independent reasons why some patients "feel different" on different forms of estrogen.

Monitoring testosterone levels

Testosterone levels can be difficult to measure in non-transgender men due to rapid fluctuations in levels, relating to pulsatile release of gonadotropins, with higher levels in the morning hours. Free testosterone represents the portion of testosterone unbound to serum proteins and depends on levels of sex hormone binding globulin (SHBG). While free testosterone can be measured, assays are unreliable.[26] Consensus is lacking on the role of free vs. total testosterone levels; total testosterone levels are reliable and readily available, however they do not describe the actual bioavailable testosterone level. Bioavailable testosterone is free testosterone plus testosterone weakly bound to albumin.[27] SHBG is elevated in the presence of estrogen, and in particular with exogenous estrogen supplementation, more so with oral estrogen than with parenteral routes due to first pass hepatic activity.[28] **For transgender care, The Endocrine Society recommends monitoring of the total testosterone level, with a target range of <55ng/dl** .[21] Calculation of the bioavailable testosterone(link is external) may help guide dosing, and can be calculated from the total testosterone, albumin, and SHBG levels.[29] A general reference range for bioavailable testosterone is >72ng/dl (2.5nmol/L).[30-32]

Monitoring gonadotropin levels

When indicated, measuring of gonadotropins (luteinizing hormone: LH and follicle stimulating hormone: FSH) can be done using the local lab ranges for eugonadal state as a reference.

Monitoring hormone levels in patients using injected estrogen

Pharmacokinetic studies of injected estrogen have been limited. Two earlier studies only examined single-dose pharmacokinetics and are therefore unable to be applied to steady-state dosing.[33] Studies of estradiol levels in the context of a monthly combined injectable contraceptive of 5mg estradiol cypionate and 25mg medroxyprogesterone acetate found peak levels 2-4 days after injection, maximum estradiol levels of

approximately 250 pg/ml, and trough levels of approximately 50pg/ml.[34,35] These findings suggest that injected estradiol in the middle of the dosing ranges recommended here will result in physiologic estradiol levels, and that use of more frequent dosing will reduce peak-trough effect. When measuring hormone levels in patients using injected forms of estradiol, a mid-cycle level is often sufficient, however if the patient is experiencing cyclic symptoms such as migraines or mood swings, peak (1-2 days post injection) and trough levels of both estradiol and testosterone may reveal wide fluctuations in hormone levels over the dosing cycle; in these cases, consider changing to an oral or transdermal preparation, or reducing the injection interval (with concomitant reduction in dose, to maintain the same total dose administered over time). A single study suggests similar pharmacokinetics when estradiol is injected subcutaneously, rather than intramuscular.[34]

Interpreting sex-specific, non-hormone labs

Alkaline phosphatase, hemoglobin and hematocrit (H&H), and creatinine may vary depending on the patient's current sex hormone configuration. Several factors contribute to these differences, bone mass, muscle mass, number of myocytes, presence or lack of menstruation, and the erythropoietic effect of testosterone. While transgender women do not menstruate, those with female-range hormone levels will lack the erythropoietic effects of male-range testosterone, and it may be reasonable to use the female-range lower limit of normal when interpreting H&H. Conversely, the lack of menstruation, and potential for pulsatile undetected androgen activity in those with retained gonads make it reasonable to use the male-range upper limit of normal for H&H. Using the male-range upper limit of normal for alkaline phosphatase and creatinine may also be appropriate for transgender women due to retained bone and muscle mass or myocyte counts, respectively. This is of particular importance in transgender women using spironolactone who are registered as female, and may have a lab result flag showing an abnormal elevated creatinine. In these cases the provider should reference the male normal ranges for their lab.[19]

Table 5. Lower and upper limits of normal to use when interpreting selected lab tests in transgende feminizing hormone therapy

Lab measure	Lower Limit of normal	Upper Limit of no
Creatinine	Not defined	Male value
Hemoglobin/Hematocrit	Female value	Male value
Alkaline Phosphatase	Not defined	Male value

Individualized dosing based on patient centered goals

Some patients may desire limited hormone effects or a mix of masculine and feminine sex characteristics. Examples include retention of erectile function with otherwise maximum feminization, or minimal feminizing effects with the exception of body or facial hair elimination or breast growth. While manipulation of dosing regimens and choice of medication can allow patients to achieve this goal, it is important to have a clear discussion with patients regarding expectations and unknowns. Specifically, it is not possible to select in advance an exact hormone regimen that will predictably allow patients to arrive at a specified configuration of sex characteristics. Furthermore, individual genetic and physiologic variation can result in wide variations in both blood levels and response to therapy between different individuals using the same route and dose. The best approach in these cases is to start with low doses and advance slowly, titrating to effect. At the same time, response to hormone therapy is also individualized and measures such as breast growth are variable in both degree and time course. Likely predictive factors of speed and degree of feminization include genetics, age at initiation of therapy, and body habitus.[17] Patients should be counseled on typical timeframes for changes and advised to avoid making comparisons to the experiences of others. Anecdotal sources suggest that maximal feminization may occur within 2-5 years.[36]

Specific considerations and conditions

Tobacco use:

Tobacco use in combination with estrogen therapy is associated with an increased risk of venous thromboembolism. All transgender women who smoke should be counselled on tobacco risks and cessation options at every visit. Many transgender women may be unable or unwilling to quit smoking; this should not represent an absolute contraindication to estrogen therapy. After an in depth and careful informed consent discussion, it is reasonable to prescribe estrogen using a harm reduction approach, with a preferred route of transdermal estrogen. Aspirin **81mg/day can be considered as an additional preventive measure in smokers, though no evidence exists to allow and informed assessment of the risk/benefit ratio between VTE prevention and gastrointestinal hemorrhage (Grading: X C W). Transdermal estrogens are preferred to minimize risk (Grading: T O S)**.

Loss of erectile function:

Sildenafil (Viagra) and tadalafil (Cialis) can be used for preservation of erectile function at any stage or with any feminizing hormone regimen, in consideration of the typical contraindications and precautions when using this class of medication. Individual results may vary. It is reasonable check both total and bioavailable testosterone levels, and consider reduction of androgen blockade to allow an increase in testosterone, depending on patient goals.

Low libido:

A study of sexual desire in transgender women found that 83% never or rarely experience spontaneous sexual desire, 76% never or rarely experience responsive sexual desire, and 22% meet the criteria for Hypoactive Sexual Desire Disorder (HSDD) by experiencing both of these in a way which results in personal or relational distress. This study also found decreases in sexual desire after genital surgery.[37] Another study found a rate of HSDD in transgender women of 34%, compared to 23% in non-transgender women. This study found no correlation between sexual desire and testosterone levels in the transgender women, though a significant correlation was found between hormones and desire in non-transgender women.[38] An unpublished study found positive correlations between libido and testosterone levels in transgender women treated with testosterone, but no effect when treated with dehydroepiandrosterone sulfate (DHEA-S).[39] As such it remains unclear if HSDD relates to androgen blockade or post-gonadectomy hormonal changes, or due to anatomical, functional and psychological changes associated with hormone therapy or genital surgery.

Post-gonadectomy:

Since estrogen dosing should be based on physiologic female levels, no reduction in estrogen dosing is required after gonadectomy. Some patients may choose to use a lower dose, which is appropriate as long as dosing is adequate to maintain bone density. **Adequacy of dosing in those on low estrogen replacement post gonadectomy may be assessed by following LH and FSH levels (Grading: T O W).[11]**

Older transgender women:

Older transgender women initiating therapy may have less rapid and a lesser degree of changes. Due to higher levels of co-occurring conditions in older individuals, there may also be higher risk of adverse effects. Nevertheless a large number of women have started hormones at advanced ages and safety and satisfaction have been reported as acceptable.[40] There is no evidence to support continuation or cessation of hormones for older transgender women.

Since the mean age of menopause in the U.S. is 49,[41] it is reasonable in transgender women who have undergone gonadectomy to consider stopping hormone therapy around age 50. Expected effects of this may be similar to non-transgender women experiencing menopause. Transgender women who retain their gonads but withdraw hormone therapy may experience return of virilization. A discussion of the pros and cons of this approach, with individualized and shared decision making is recommended.

Pituitary adenoma (prolactinoma) and galactorrhea:

Prolactin elevations and growth of pituitary prolactinomas are theoretical risks associated with estrogen therapy; several cases have been reported.[42] However, with the administration of physiologic doses of estrogen, there is no clear basis for an increased risk of prolactinomas in comparison to the population background rate in non-transgender women. Furthermore, **Endocrine Society guidelines for the management of incidental prolactinomas are expectant management only, in the absence of suggestive visual or other symptoms (significant galactorrhea, headaches).[43] Routine screening with serum prolactin levels in asymptomatic transgender women would not have an impact on management, and could result in costs or harm if further workup if pursued. As such it is recommended that prolactin be checked only in cases of visual disturbances, excessive galactorrhea, and be considered in cases of new onset headaches.** It is noted that some transgender women experience a minimal amount of galactorrhea early in their hormone therapy course. The presence of non-bloody minimal galactorrhea from more than one duct and/or bilateral is almost certainly physiologic and would not warrant further evaluation.

Venous thromboembolism:

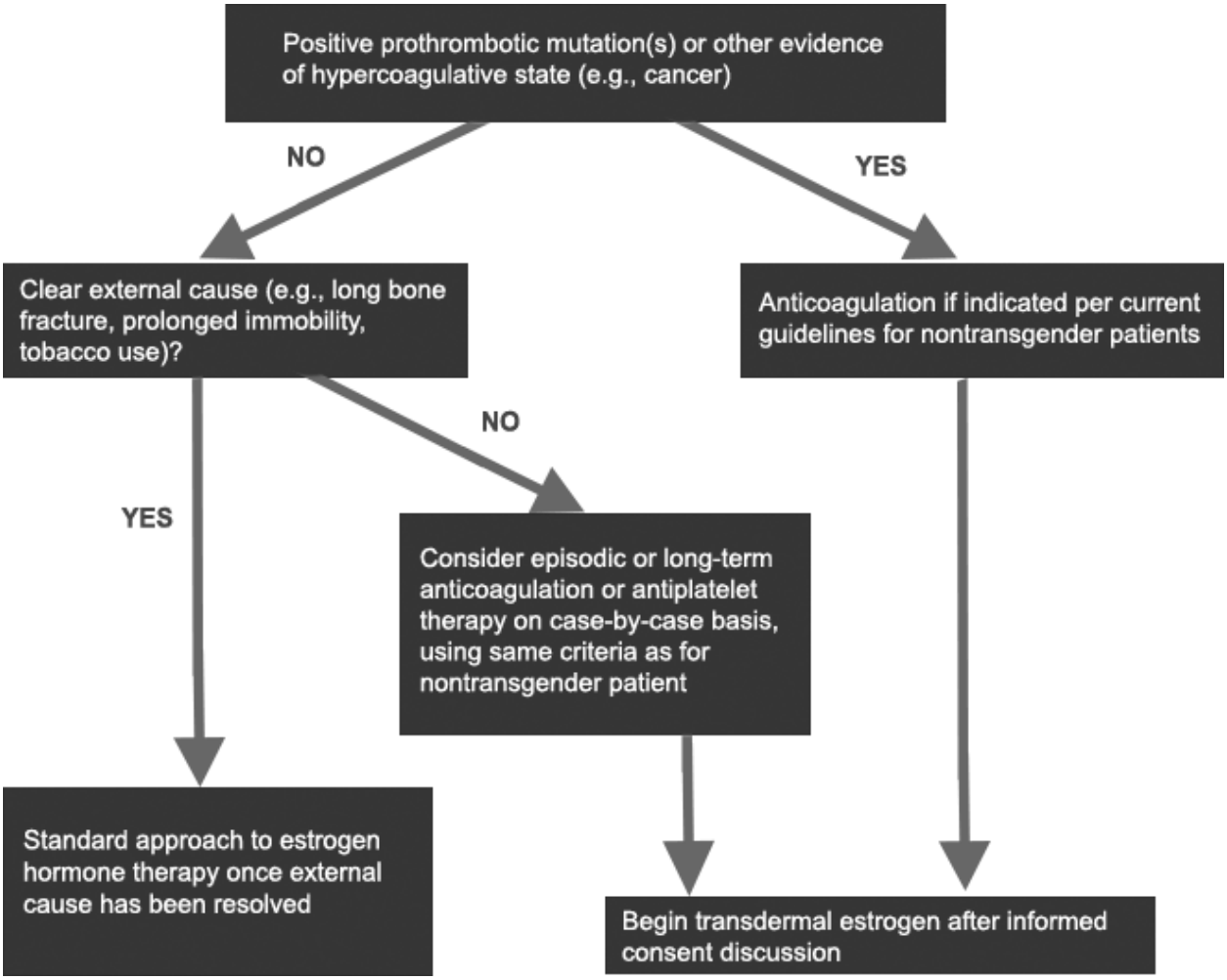
Data from studies of menopausal women suggest no increased risk of venous thromboembolism with the use of transdermal estradiol.[44] There are some data suggestive of increased thrombogenicity and cardiovascular risk when conjugated equine estrogens (Premarin) are used.[1,2] Data on the risk associated with oral 17-beta estradiol are mixed, with some suggesting no increased risk and others suggesting a 2.5 - 4 fold increased risk.[20,44] Even in the case of a 2.5 fold increase, the background rate for VTE in the general population is very low (1 in 1000 to 1 in 10,000), so the absolute risk increase is minimal.[3] There is weak evidence that sublingual administration of oral estradiol tablets might reduce thromboembolic risk due to a bypass of hepatic first pass, with one study showing 13 fold increase in peak estradiol blood levels but similar 24 hour area-under-the-curve.[45] A study of sublingual estradiol for the management of post-partum depression found that it was well tolerated, and the increased pulsatile nature of this route may more closely mimics natural ovarian estrogen secretion.[46] Sublingual administration requires insuring that the estradiol tablets are micronized; while most commonly available estradiol tablets are micronized, specifying as such on the written prescription (or consulting with the dispensing pharmacist) is recommended. Conversely, the overall risk of taking oral estradiol is low, and patients using sublingual estradiol may experience wide swings in hormone levels, inconsistent absorption, and more difficulty suppressing testosterone via feedback inhibition.

There is also some limited evidence to suggest that the risk of VTE in menopausal women may be driven more by the choice of progestogen, and that pregnane derived progestogens such as medroxyprogesterone in combination with oral estradiol does not confer an increased risk, while norpregnane derived progestogens such as norethindrone may increase risk by 80% when used with oral estradiol.[20] Prior studies reporting a 20 to 40 fold increased risk of VTE in transgender women involved the use of high doses (100-200mcg/day) of thrombogenic ethinyl estradiol in a mix of smokers and non-smokers.[47,48] A retrospective cohort of Dutch transgender women found no increased risk in VTE once ethinyl estradiol was replaced by bioidentical estradiol as the standard regimen.[49]

Insufficient evidence exists to definitively guide estrogen therapy in transgender women with risk factors or with a personal history of prior VTE, either on or off estrogen. A report of 11 transgender women with a history of activated protein C resistance (the mechanism of action implicated in the hypercoagulable state associated with the Factor-V Lieden mutation) using transdermal estradiol without anticoagulation found no clotting events after a mean of 64 months of therapy.[50]

Figures 1-5 describe the approach to various scenarios of VTE history or risk factors and estrogen use. The decision to initiate episodic (i.e. before long airplane flights) or long term anticoagulation or antiplatelet therapy should be considered in the context of risks associated with major gastrointestinal or intracranial hemorrhage. ***Routine*** **VTE prophylaxis with aspirin in unselected transgender populations is not recommended**. ***Routine*** **screening for prothrombotic mutations is not recommended** in the absence of risk factors.[50] Regardless of the circumstances, estrogen therapy should not be administered in patients with significant risk factors for or history of VTE who continue to smoke tobacco.

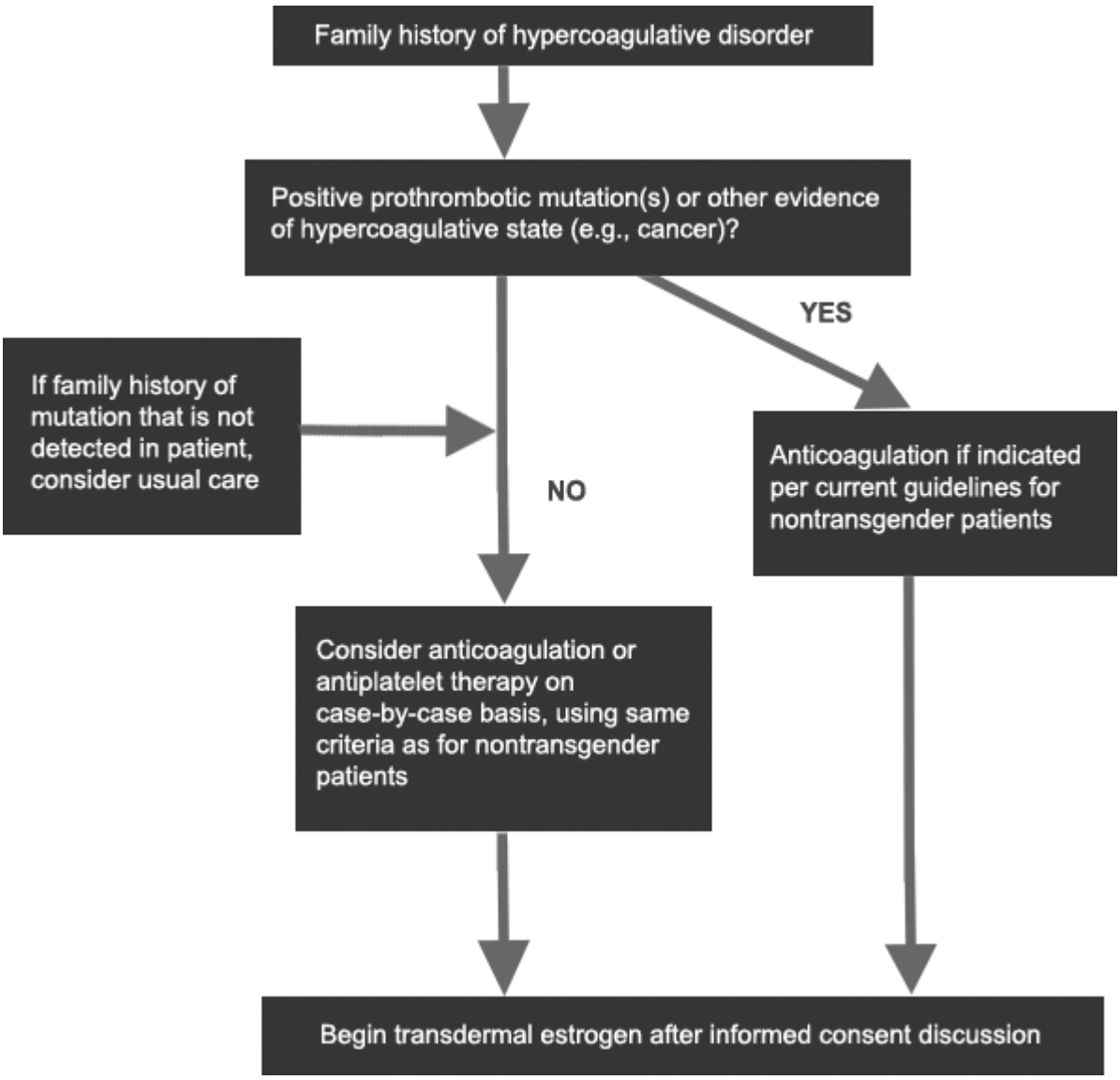
Figure 1. Approach to management of estrogen in patients with a personal history of VTE



This figure outlines the estrogen management approaches for patients with a personal history of VTE.

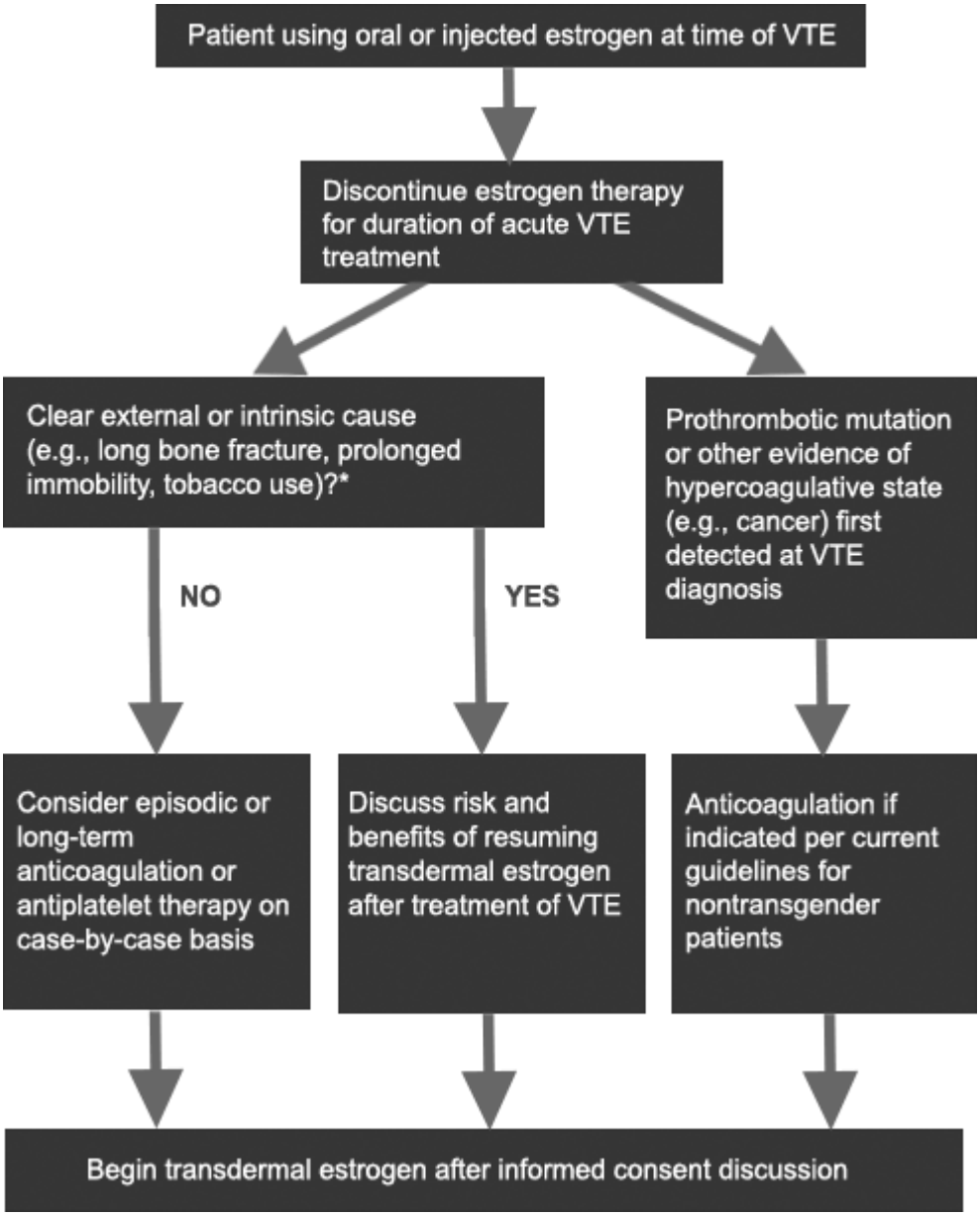
1. Patients with positive prothrombotic mutations or other evidence of hypercoagulative state should begin anticoagulation as per current guidelines for nontransgender patients. Begin transdermal estrogen after informed consent discussion.
2. For patients without positive prothrombotic mutations or evidence of hypercoagulative state, determine if there is a clear external cause for VTE such as long bone fracture, immobility, or tobacco use. If yes, continue with standard approach to estrogen therapy once external cause has been resolved. If no, consider episodic or long-term anticoagulation or antiplatelet therapy on a case-by-case basis, using the same criteria as for nontransgender patient.

Figure 2. Approach to management of estrogen in patients with a family history of VTE but no personal history of VTE



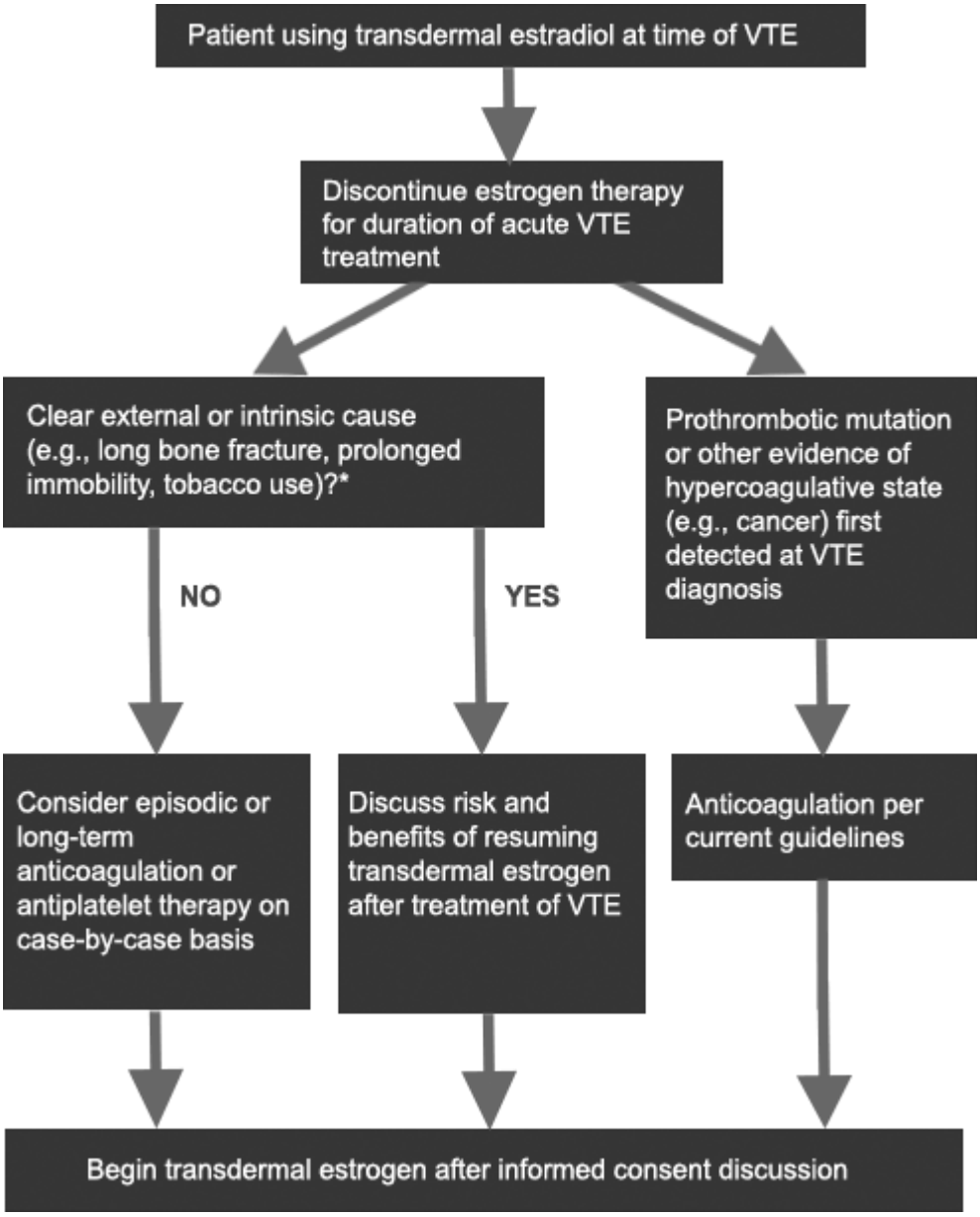
Approach to management of estrogen in patients with a family history of VTE but no personal history of VTE. Treat as nontransgender patients. Consider treatment per guidelines.

Figure 3. Approach to patient using oral or injected estrogen at time of first diagnosis of VTE



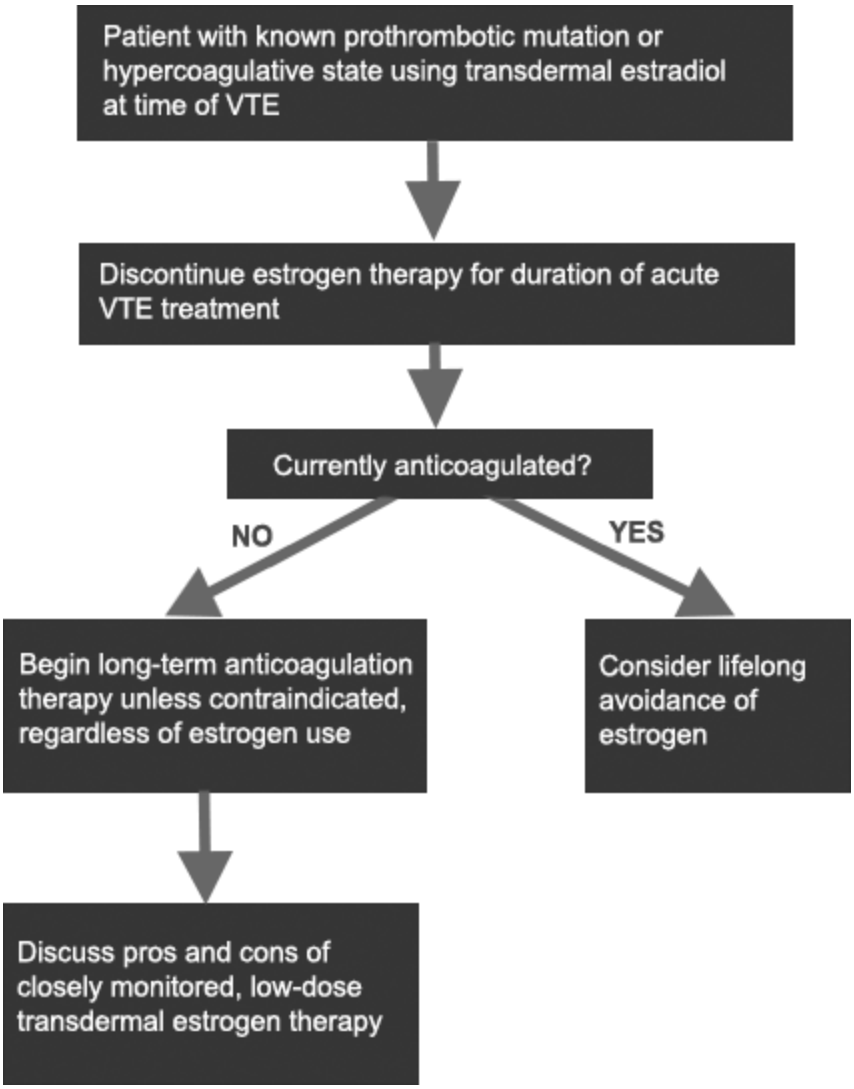
Discusses decision points related to determining cause of VTE and use of anticoagulation agents before beginning transdermal estrogen therapy.

Figure 4. Approach to patient using transdermal estradiol at time of first diagnosis of VTE



Discusses decision points for treatment of patients taking transdermal estradiol at time of first diagnosis of VTE and whether to consider longterm anticoagulation or anti-platelet therapy.

Figure 5. Approach to patients with known hypercoagulative state who use transdermal estradiol and present with acute VTE



Decision tree for patients with known hypercoagulative state who present with acute VTE and use transdermal estradiol. Those already anitcoagulated should consider lifelong avoidance of estrogen therapy. Others should begin long-term anticoagulation therapy unless contraindicated.

Autoimmunity:

There is a certain but incompletely defined linkage between sex hormones and autoimmune conditions. Testosterone has been associated with overall immune suppression, and autoimmune conditions are more common in non-transgender women than men.[51] Testosterone deprivation results in an increased Th1:Th2 ratio.[52] However the relationship is more complex, as demonstrated by the paradoxical improvements seen in multiple sclerosis during pregnancy.[51] In transgender women who have undergone orchiectomy or have full androgen blockade, some evidence suggests that

supplementation with dehydroepiandrosterone (DHEA) may counteract some of the shift toward autoimmunity.[53] Patients with autoimmune conditions should be informed that their condition could potentially worsen (or improve) once feminizing therapy has begun. Hormone dosing should begin low and advance slowly, monitoring for worsening symptoms, and in collaboration with any specialists who may be managing the autoimmune condition.

Migraine:

Migraines have a clear hormonal component and may be exacerbated by estrogen therapy. Patients with a history of migraines should consider starting with a low dose and titrating upward as tolerated. Oral or transdermal estrogen may be preferred to the potentially cyclic levels associated with injected estrogen.[54] While migraine with aura is associated with an increased risk of stroke in women using oral contraceptives,[55] it is not clear if this risk translates to the use of bioidentical estradiol.

Mental health conditions:

While hormones may contribute to mood disorders (such as in premenstrual dysphoric disorder or postpartum depression), there is no clear evidence that estrogen therapy is directly associated with the onset of or worsening of mental health conditions. In fact one study found that transgender women experience improvements in social functioning and reduced anxiety and depression once estrogen therapy is begun.[56] Mental health conditions in transgender women should be approached with a broad differential diagnosis as in any other patient. It may be advisable to avoid injected estrogen due to the potentially cyclic levels, which could bring about or worsen existing mood symptoms.

Estrogen therapy in patients with a prior history of cancer:

An active estrogen-sensitive cancer is a contraindication to estrogen therapy. For patients with a prior history of estrogen sensitive cancer (breast, pituitary), consultation with an oncologist is recommended. While androgen deprivation is a mainstay of treatment for advanced prostate cancer, it is unclear if estrogen therapy may confer an independent protection or increased risk of prostate cancer.[57] PSA should be considered unreliable in those using antiandrogen or estrogen therapy due to the high risk of false negative tests.

Perioperative use of feminizing hormones:

No direct study of the risk of perioperative venous thromboembolism in users of bioidentical estrogens has been conducted. Guidelines from two British professional organizations make a weak recommendation to discontinue menopausal hormone therapy in the perioperative period, however both acknowledge that this may not be needed in the

setting of proper prophylaxis (i.e. heparin or compression devices).[58] Studies of perioperative ethinyl estradiol in users of hormonal contraception have mixed findings and are wrought with confounding and methodological limitations.[59] Many surgeons insist that transgender women discontinue estrogen for several weeks before and after any gender affirming procedure.[60,61] These recommendations may appear as benign to the surgeon; however to the transgender woman undergoing a life and body-altering procedure simultaneous with gonadectomy, sudden and prolonged complete withdrawal of estrogens can have a profound impact. Postoperative depression is a nontrivial concern and may have some basis in the drastic hormone shifts, including cessation of estrogens, experienced in the perioperative period. **There is no evidence to suggest that transgender women who lack specific risk factors (smoking, personal or family history, excessive doses or use of synthetic estrogens) must cease estrogen therapy before and after surgical procedures, in particular with appropriate use of prophylaxis and an informed consent discussion of the pros and cons of discontinuing hormone therapy during this time. Possible alternatives include using a lower dose of estrogen, and/or changing to a transdermal route if not already in use**.[62]

About consent forms for hormone therapy:

Informed consent is a process which occurs between a patient and a provider. The process should include an individualized discussion of the risks, benefits, unknowns, alternatives, and risk of no treatment. We are no longer recommending the use of consent forms for hormone therapy. Many other common interventions such as contraception or HIV pre-exposure prophylaxis do not involve the use of consent forms, and rely on a discussion and shared decision making between patient and provider. If the informed consent process is properly documented in the chart, consent forms do not likely provide any additional legal protections to the provider. Elimination of consent forms helps to demystify and destigmatize hormone therapy. Providers can use the information provided in these guidelines to frame their individualized discussions with patients.

References

1. Shifren JL, Rifai N, Desindes S, McIlwain M, Doros G, Mazer NA. A comparison of the short-term effects of oral conjugated equine estrogens versus transdermal estradiol on C-reactive protein, other serum markers of inflammation, and other hepatic proteins in naturally menopausal women. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2008 May;93(5):1702-10.
2. Ho JY-P, Chen M-J, Sheu WH-H, Yi Y-C, Tsai AC-W, Guu H-F, et al. Differential effects of oral conjugated equine estrogen and transdermal estrogen on atherosclerotic

vascular disease risk markers and endothelial function in healthy postmenopausal women. Hum Reprod Oxf Engl. 2006 Oct;21(10):2715-20.

3. Hugon-Rodin J, Gompel A, Plu-Bureau G. Mechanisms in endocrinology: epidemiology of hormonal contraceptives-related venous thromboembolism. Eur J Endocrinol. 2014 Dec 1;171(6):R221-30.
4. Asscheman H, Giltay EJ, Megens JAJ, de Ronde WP, van Trotsenburg MAA, Gooren LJG. A long-term follow-up study of mortality in transsexuals receiving treatment with cross-sex hormones. Eur J Endocrinol Eur Fed Endocr Soc. 2011 Apr;164(4):635-42.
5. Koetsawang S, Mandlekar AV, Krishna UR, Purandare VN, Deshpande CK, Chew SC, et al. A randomized, double-blind study of two combined oral contraceptives containing the same progestogen, but different estrogens. Contraception. 1980 May;21(5):445-59.
6. Prior JC, Vigna YM, Watson D. Spironolactone with physiological female steroids for presurgical therapy of male-to-female transsexualism. Arch Sex Behav. 1989 Feb;18(1):49-57.
7. Sinclair R, Patel M, Dawson TL, Yazdabadi A, Yip L, Perez A, et al. Hair loss in women: medical and cosmetic approaches to increase scalp hair fullness. Br J Dermatol. 2011 Dec;165 Suppl 3:12-8.
8. Rittmaster RS. 5alpha-reductase inhibitors. J Androl. 1997 Dec;18(6):582-7.
9. Traish AM, Hassani J, Guay AT, Zitzmann M, Hansen ML. Adverse side effects of 5α-reductase inhibitors therapy: persistent diminished libido and erectile dysfunction and depression in a subset of patients. J Sex Med. 2011 Mar;8(3):872-84.
10. Bienz M, Saad F. Androgen-deprivation therapy and bone loss in prostate cancer patients: a clinical review. BoneKEy Rep. 2015;4:716.
11. Esteva I, Yahyaoui R, Cano G, Giraldo F, Bergero T, Ruiz de Adana S, et al. Evolution of gonadal axis after sex reassignment surgery in transsexual patients in the Spanish public health system. Int J Transgenderism. 2006 Jun 1;9(2):15-22.
12. Bessone F, Lucena MI, Roma MG, Stephens C, Medina-Cáliz I, Frider B, et al. Cyproterone acetate induces a wide spectrum of acute liver damage including corticosteroid-responsive hepatitis: report of 22 cases. Liver Int Off J Int Assoc Study Liver. 2016 Feb;36(2):302-10.

13. Kolvenbag GJCM, Blackledge GRP. Worldwide activity and safety of bicalutamide: a summary review. Urology. 1996 Jan;47(1, Supplement 1):70-9.

14. Wolf-Gould CS, Wolf-Gould CH. A transgender woman with testicular cancer: a new twist on an old problem. LGBT Health. 2015 Dec 24;

15. Rosenthal SM. Approach to the patient: transgender youth: endocrine considerations. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2014 Dec;99(12):4379-89.

16. Dittrich R, Binder H, Cupisti S, Hoffmann I, Beckmann MW, Mueller A. Endocrine treatment of male-to-female transsexuals using gonadotropin-releasing hormone agonist. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes Off J Ger Soc Endocrinol Ger Diabetes Assoc. 2005 Dec;113(10):586-92.

17. Wierckx K, Gooren L, T'Sjoen G. Clinical review: Breast development in trans women receiving cross-sex hormones. J Sex Med. 2014 May;11(5):1240-7.

18. Orentreich N, Durr NP. Proceedings: Mammogenesis in transsexuals. J Invest Dermatol. 1974 Jul;63(1):142-6.

19. Writing Group for the Women's Health Initiative Investigators. Risks and benefits of estrogen plus progestin in healthy postmenopausal women: principal results from the women's health initiative randomized controlled trial. JAMA. 2002 Jul 17;288(3):321-33.

20. Canonico M, Oger E, Plu-Bureau G, Conard J, Meyer G, Levesque H, et al. Hormone therapy and venous thromboembolism among postmenopausal women: impact of the route of estrogen administration and progestogens: the ESTHER Study. Circulation. 2007 Feb;115(7):840-5.

21. Hembree WC, Cohen-Kettenis P, Delemarre-van de Waal HA, Gooren LJ, Meyer WJ, Spack NP, et al. Endocrine treatment of transsexual persons: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2009 Jun 9;94(9):3132-54.

22. Deutsch MB, Bhakri V, Kubicek K. Effects of cross-sex hormone treatment on transgender women and men. Obstet Gynecol. 2015 Mar;125(3):605-10.

23. Quest Diagnostics. Estradiol. [cited 2015 Nov 20]. Test Center Info - For Physicians & Hospitals(link is external)

24. Ansbacher R. The pharmacokinetics and efficacy of different estrogens are not equivalent. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2001 Feb;184(3):255-63.

25. O'Connell MB. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacologic variation between different estrogen products. J Clin Pharmacol. 1995 Sep;35(9 Suppl):18S - 24S.

26. Ly LP, Handelsman DJ. Empirical estimation of free testosterone from testosterone and sex hormone-binding globulin immunoassays. Eur J Endocrinol Eur Fed Endocr Soc. 2005 Mar;152(3):471-8.

27. Rosner W, Auchus RJ, Azziz R, Sluss PM, Raff H. Position statement: Utility, limitations, and pitfalls in measuring testosterone: an Endocrine Society position statement. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2007 Feb;92(2):405-13.

28. Serin IS, Ozçelik B, BaŞbuğ M, Aygen E, Kula M, Erez R. Long-term effects of continuous oral and transdermal estrogen replacement therapy on sex hormone binding globulin and free testosterone levels. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 2001 Dec 1;99(2):222-5.

29. Carnegie C. Diagnosis of hypogonadism: clinical assessments and laboratory tests. Rev Urol. 2004;6(Suppl 6):S3-8.

30. Sih R, Morley JE, Kaiser FE, Perry HM, Patrick P, Ross C. Testosterone replacement in older hypogonadal men: a 12-month randomized controlled trial. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1997 Jun;82(6):1661-7.

31. Korenman SG, Morley JE, Mooradian AD, Davis SS, Kaiser FE, Silver AJ, et al. Secondary hypogonadism in older men: its relation to impotence. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1990 Oct;71(4):963-9.

32. Nelson R, O'Kane D, Heser D, Klee G. A simple and rapid assay for bioavailable-testosterone. Clin Chem. 2001 Jun;47(6):A20-A20.

33. Düsterberg B, Nishino Y. Pharmacokinetic and pharmacological features of oestradiol valerate. Maturitas. 1982 Dec;4(4):315-24.

34. Sierra-Ramírez JA, Lara-Ricalde R, Lujan M, Velázquez-Ramírez N, Godínez-Victoria M, Hernádez-Munguía IA, et al. Comparative pharmacokinetics and pharmacodynamics after subcutaneous and intramuscular administration of medroxyprogesterone acetate (25 mg) and estradiol cypionate (5 mg). Contraception. 2011 Dec;84(6):565-70.

35. Thurman A, Kimble T, Hall P, Schwartz JL, Archer DF. Medroxyprogesterone acetate and estradiol cypionate injectable suspension (Cyclofem) monthly contraceptive injection: steady-state pharmacokinetics. Contraception. 2013 Jun;87(6):738-43.

36. Coleman E, Bockting W, Botzer M, Cohen-Kettenis P, DeCuypere G, Feldman J, et al. Standards of Care for the Health of Transsexual, Transgender, and Gender-Nonconforming People, Version 7. Int J Transgenderism. 2012;13(4):165-232.

37. Wierckx K, Elaut E, Van Hoorde B, Heylens G, De Cuypere G, Monstrey S, et al. Sexual desire in trans persons: associations with sex reassignment treatment. J Sex Med. 2014 Jan;11(1):107-18.

38. Elaut E, De Cuypere G, De Sutter P, Gijs L, Van Trotsenburg M, Heylens G, et al. Hypoactive sexual desire in transsexual women: prevalence and association with testosterone levels. Eur J Endocrinol Eur Fed Endocr Soc. 2008 Mar;158(3):393-9.

39. Sivakumaran D, Seal L. A retrospective study on the use of androgen therapy in trans women to treat HSSD. EPATH conference; 2015 Mar 13; Ghent, Belgium.

40. Gooren L, Lips P. Conjectures concerning cross-sex hormone treatment of aging transsexual persons. J Sex Med. 2014 Aug;11(8):2012-9.

41. Tom SE, Cooper R, Patel KV, Guralnik JM. Menopausal Characteristics and Physical Functioning in Older Adulthood in the NHANES III. Menopause N Y N. 2012 Mar;19(3):283-9.

42. Goh HH, Li XF, Ratnam SS. Effects of cross-gender steroid hormone treatment on prolactin concentrations in humans. Gynecol Endocrinol Off J Int Soc Gynecol Endocrinol. 1992 Jun;6(2):113-7.

43. Freda PU, Beckers AM, Katznelson L, Molitch ME, Montori VM, Post KD, et al. Pituitary incidentaloma: an endocrine society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2011 Apr;96(4):894-904.

44. Canonico M, Plu-Bureau G, Lowe G, Scarabin PY. Hormone replacement therapy and risk of venous thromboembolism in postmenopausal women: systematic review and meta-analysis. Bmj. 2008;336(7655):1227.

45. Price TM, Blauer KL, Hansen M, Stanczyk F, Lobo R, Bates GW. Single-dose pharmacokinetics of sublingual versus oral administration of micronized 17 beta-estradiol. Obstet Gynecol. 1997 Mar;89(3):340-5.

46. Ahokas A, Kaukoranta J, Wahlbeck K, Aito M. Estrogen deficiency in severe postpartum depression: successful treatment with sublingual physiologic 17beta-estradiol: a preliminary study. J Clin Psychiatry. 2001 May;62(5):332-6.

47. Asscheman H, Gooren LJG, Eklund PLE. Mortality and morbidity in transsexual patients with cross-gender hormone treatment. Metabolism. 1989;38(9):869-73.

48. van Kesteren PJ, Asscheman H, Megens JA, Gooren LJ. Mortality and morbidity in transsexual subjects treated with cross-sex hormones. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf). 1997 Sep;47(3):337-42.

49. Asscheman H, Giltay EJ, Megens JAJ, de Ronde W, van Trotsenburg MAA, Gooren LJG. A long-term follow-up study of mortality in transsexuals receiving treatment with cross-sex hormones. Eur J Endocrinol. 2011 Jan 25;164(4):635-42.

50. Ott J, Kaufmann U, Bentz EK, Huber JC, Tempfer CB. Incidence of thrombophilia and venous thrombosis in transsexuals under cross-sex hormone therapy. Fertil Steril. 2010;93(4):1267-72.

51. Gold SM, Voskuhl RR. [Internet]. Elsevier; 2009 [cited 2015 Nov 21]. p. 239-51. Estrogen and testosterone therapies in multiple sclerosis. In: Progress in Brain Research(link is external)

52. Trigunaite A, Dimo J, Jørgensen TN. Suppressive effects of androgens on the immune system. Cell Immunol. 2015 Apr;294(2):87-94.

53. Labrie F. DHEA, important source of sex steroids in men and even more in women. Prog Brain Res. 2010;182:97-148.

54. Chai NC, Peterlin BL, Calhoun AH. Migraine and estrogen. Curr Opin Neurol. 2014 Jun;27(3):315-24.

55. Nappi RE, Merki-Feld GS, Terreno E, Pellegrinelli A, Viana M. Hormonal contraception in women with migraine: is progestogen-only contraception a better choice? J Headache Pain. 2013;14:66.

56. Gómez-Gil E, Zubiaurre-Elorza L, Esteva I, Guillamon A, Godás T, Cruz Almaraz M, et al. Hormone-treated transsexuals report less social distress, anxiety and depression. Psychoneuroendocrinology. 2012 May;37(5):662-70.

57. Misawa A, Inoue S. Estrogen-related receptors in breast cancer and prostate cancer. Front Endocrinol. 2015;6:83.

58. Royal College of Obstetricians and Gynaecologists. United Kingdom; 2011 May. Report No.: 19. Available from: Venous Thromboembolism and Hormone Replacement Therapy, 3rd edition(link is external)

59. Whitehead EM, Whitehead MI. The pill, HRT and postoperative thromboembolism: cause for concern? Anaesthesia. 1991 Jul 1;46(7):521-2.

60. Johnson RL, Hemington-Gorse SJ, Dhital SK. Do cosmetic surgeons consider estrogen-containing drugs to be of significant risk in the development of thromboembolism? Aesthetic Plast Surg. 2008 Apr 30;32(5):743-7.

61. Asscheman H, T'Sjoen G, Lemaire A, Mas M, Meriggiola MC, Mueller A, et al. Venous thrombo-embolism as a complication of cross-sex hormone treatment of male-to-female transsexual subjects: a review. Andrologia. 2014 Sep;46(7):791-5.

62. Brighouse D. Hormone replacement therapy (HRT) and anaesthesia. Br J Anaesth. 2001 May 1;86(5):709

Masculinizing Hormone Therapy

Introduction

The goal of masculinizing hormone therapy is the development of male secondary sex characteristics, and suppression/minimization of female secondary sex characteristics. General effects include the development of facial hair, virilizing changes in voice, a redistribution of facial and body subcutaneous fat, increased muscle mass, increased body hair, change in sweat and odor patterns, frontal and temporal hairline recession, and possibly male pattern baldness. Sexual and gonadal effects include an increase in libido, clitoral growth, vaginal dryness, and cessation of menses. An ovulatory state is common, though not absolute and long-term fertility may be affected, though some transgender men are able to discontinue testosterone and achieve successful pregnancy.[1] Masculinizing hormone therapy may bring about changes in emotional and social functioning, though these can vary from person to person and stereotypes should be avoided. The general approach involves the use of one of several forms of parenteral testosterone.

All testosterone preparations currently used in the U.S. are "bioidentical", meaning they are chemically equivalent to the testosterone secreted from the human testicle. Prior use of oral methyltestosterone and other synthetics commonly encountered in bodybuilding communities has resulted in unsubstantiated concerns about negative hepatic effects of testosterone use in transgender men. Testosterone is available in a number of injected and topical preparations, which have been designed for use in non-transgender men with low androgen levels (see table). Since the label dosing (not included in table) for these medications are based on the treatment of men with low, but not no, testosterone, higher dosing may be needed in transgender men (see table) than are commonly used in non-transgender men.

Table 1. Hormone preparations and dosing (Grading: T O M)

Androgen	Initial - low dose[b]	Initial - typical	Maximum - typical[c]	Comment
a. Available as standard U.S. Pharmacopeia (USP) as well as compounded products. b. Initial - low dose recommended for genderqueer and nonbinary dosing. c. Maximum dosing does not mean maximal effect. Furthermore, these dosage ranges do not neces a target or ideal dose. Dose increases should be based on patient response and/or monitored ho Some patients may require less than this amount, and some may require more. d. Doses of less than 20.25mg with 1.62% gel, or less than 30mg with 2% axillary gel may be difficul measuring one-half of a pump or packet can present a challenge. Patients requiring doses lower and whose insurance does not cover 1% gel may require prior authorization or an appeal. e. Testosterone creams are prepared by individual compounding pharmacies. Specific absorption a varies and consultation with the individual compounding pharmacist is recommended. f. Testosterone undecanoate has been used extensively for transgender care outside of the U.S. for years.[2,3] It has recently become available in the U.S. Testosterone undecanoate has been asso cases of pulmonary oil microembolism and anaphylaxis. As such in the United States, the drug is through a restricted program called the AVEED Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy (REMS) Pr external). All injections must be administered in an office or hospital setting by a trained and regi care provider and monitored for 30 minutes afterwards for adverse reactions.				
Testosterone Cypionate[a]	20 mg/week IM/SQ	50mg/week IM/SQ	100mg/week IM/SQ	For q 2 wk each dose
Testosterone Enthanate[a]	20mg/week IM/SQ	50mg/week IM/SQ	100mg/week IM/SQ	"
Testosterone topical gel 1%	12.5-25 mg Q AM	50mg Q AM	100mg Q AM	May come packet for

Table 1. Hormone preparations and dosing (Grading: T O M)

Androgen	Initial - low dose[b]	Initial - typical	Maximum - typical[c]	Comment
Testosterone topical gel 1.62%[d]	20.25mg Q AM	40.5 - 60.75mg Q AM	103.25mg Q AM	"
Testosterone axillary gel 2%	30mg Q AM	60mg Q AM	90-120mg Q AM	Comes in pump = 30
Testosterone Undecanoate[f]	N/A	750mg IM, repeat in 4 weeks, then q 10 weeks ongoing	N/A	Requires p manufactu program[f]

Route of injection (intramuscular vs. subcutaneous): While testosterone for injection is labeled for the intramuscular route, many providers have administered testosterone using the subcutaneous route with good efficacy and patient satisfaction, and without complications. Benefits of subcutaneous administration include a smaller and less painful needle, and may avoid scarring or fibrosis from long term (possibly > 50 years) intramuscular therapy (Grading: T O M).[4,5]

Proper use of transdermal testosterone gel: These gels involve an evaporable vehicle which contains the testosterone medication. Manufacturer labeling recommends applying in the morning. After application, the testosterone moves into the dermis, where it slowly releases over the course of the day. Care should be taken to avoid any contact of the gel with others, especially women and children. This includes gel, which remains on clothing or other fomites. Gel should be applied only to upper arms or shoulders, and not to other sites. Site of application should remain dry for at least 2 hours. It is also recommended that the application site be washed at a later time if close skin-skin contact with another person is expected.

Table 2. Titration and monitoring of masculinizing hormone therapy

Therapy	Comments	Baseline	3 months*	6 months*	12 months*
* In first year of therapy only; ** is optional and may be helpful in complex cases (see text) Used to calculate bioavailable testosteron bioavailable testosterone(link is external)					
Lipids	No evidence to support lipid monitoring at any time; use clinician discretion	Based on USPSTF guidelines			
A1c or fasting glucose	No evidence to support lipid monitoring at any time; use clinician discretion	Based on USPSTF guidelines			
Estradiol					
Total Testosterone			X	X	X
Sex Hormone Binding Globulin (SHBG)**			PRN		
Albumin**			PRN		

Table 2. Titration and monitoring of masculinizing hormone therapy

Therapy	Comments	Baseline	3 months*	6 months*	12 months*
Hemoglobin & Hematocrit		X	X	X	X

Titration upwards of dose should be driven by patient goals, in the context of clinical response, hormone level monitoring, and safety monitoring (i.e. hemoglobin and hematocrit [H&H]). Clinical response can be measured objectively by the presence of amenorrhea by 6 months.[4] Once within the normal male physiologic range, there is no evidence that higher doses/levels of testosterone result in a greater degree of virilization. Lab reference ranges for total testosterone levels are generally very wide (roughly 350-1100ng/dl); if men have testosterone levels at the lower end of the normal male range and are either concerned about slow progress or are having symptoms of low energy, libido, or mood, it is reasonable to slowly increase the dose while monitoring for side effects. Once total testosterone is greater than the midpoint value in the lab reported reference range, it is unclear if an increase in dose will have any positive effect on perceived slow progress, or on mood symptoms or other side effects.

While some providers choose to omit hormone level monitoring, and only monitor for clinical progress or changes, this approach runs the risk of a suboptimal degree of virilization if testosterone levels have not reached the target range. A prospective study of 31 transgender men newly started on either subcutaneous 50-60mg/week testosterone cypionate, 5g/day 1% testosterone gel, or 4mg/day testosterone patch found that after 6 months only 21 (68%) achieved male range testosterone levels and 5 (16%) had persistent menses, with only 9 (29%) achieving physiologic male-range estradiol levels.[5] Some genderqueer and gender-nonconforming/nonbinary patients may prefer to maintain testosterone levels in an intermediate range. Regardless of initial dosing scheme chosen, titrate upwards based on testosterone levels measured at 3 and 6 months. Once hormone levels have reached the target range for a specific patient, it is reasonable to monitor levels yearly. As with testosterone replacement in non-transgender men, annual visits and lab monitoring are sufficient for transgender men on a stable hormone regimen. Endocrine Society guidelines recommend monitoring of hormone levels every 3 months.[6] In practice this is not realistic and not likely to add value once a stable dosing has been achieved.[7]

Other reasons for measuring hormone levels in the maintenance phase include significant metabolic shifts such as the onset of diabetes or a thyroid disorder, substantial weight changes, subjective or objective evidence of regression of virilization, or new symptoms potentially precipitated or exacerbated by hormone imbalances such as hot flashes, pelvic cramping or bleeding, or migraines. Such patients may also require more frequent office visits to manage coexisting conditions. Increased frequency of office visits may also be useful for patients with complex psychosocial situations to allow for the provision of ancillary or wraparound services.

General comments on hormone level interpretation

Interpretation of laboratory results requires special attention in the context of transgender care. Numerous sources publish target ranges for serum estradiol, total estrogens, free, total and bioidentical testosterone, and sex hormone binding globulin. However, these specific ranges may vary between different laboratories and techniques. Furthermore, the interpretation of reference ranges supplied with lab result reports may not be applicable if the patient is registered under a gender that differs from their intended hormonal sex. For example, a transgender man who is still registered as female will result in lab reference ranges reported for a female; clearly these ranges are not applicable for a transgender man using virilizing hormone therapy. Hormone levels for genderqueer or gender nonconforming/nonbinary patients may intentionally lie in the mid-range between male and female norms. Providers are encouraged to consult with their local lab to obtain hormone level reference ranges for both "male" and "female" norms, and then apply the correct range when interpreting results based on the current hormonal sex, rather than the sex of registration. Testosterone levels must also be interpreted in the context of knowing whether the specimen was drawn at the peak, trough or mid-cycle of the dosing interval, as values can vary widely (and if so may cause symptoms, see below and pelvic pain and bleeding guidelines).

Monitoring testosterone levels

Testosterone levels can be difficult to measure in non-transgender men due to rapid fluctuations in levels, relating to pulsatile release of gonadotropins. In transgender men who are receiving exogenous testosterone, levels may lack these rapid fluctuations (though they may vary over the dosing interval). Free testosterone represents the portion of testosterone unbound to serum proteins and depends on levels of sex hormone binding globulin (SHBG). Free testosterone can be measured, however assays are unreliable.[8] Consensus is lacking on the role of free vs. total testosterone levels; total testosterone levels are reliable and readily available, however they do not describe the actual bioavailable testosterone level. Bioavailable testosterone is free testosterone plus

testosterone weakly bound to albumin.[9] SHBG is elevated in the presence of estrogen and thyroxine.[10] It is decreased in the presence of androgens, prolactin, and high levels of insulin and growth hormone. For transgender care, The Endocrine Society recommends monitoring of the total testosterone level.[11] Calculation of the bioavailable testosterone(link is external) is also likely to help guide dosing in complicated cases, or in cases where results or side effects exist in the setting of a normal range total testosterone. Bioavailable testosterone can be calculated from the total testosterone, albumin, and SHBG levels. A general reference range for bioavailable testosterone is > 72ng/dl (2.5nmol/L).[12-15]

Monitoring hormone levels in patients using injected testosterone

When measuring hormone levels in patients using injected forms of testosterone, a mid-cycle level is often sufficient however if the patient is experiencing cyclic symptoms such as migraines, pelvic cramping, or mood swings. Peak (1-2 days post injection) and trough levels of testosterone may reveal wide fluctuations in hormone levels over the dosing cycle; in these cases, consider changing to a transdermal preparation, or reducing the injection interval (with concomitant reduction in dose, to maintain the same total dose administered over time).[16,17]

Monitoring estradiol levels

A six-month prospective study of 31 transgender men newly started on testosterone found that only 9 (29%) achieved physiologic male-range estradiol levels.[18] In reality, physiologic female estradiol ranges are wide and vary over the menstrual cycle; there can be significant overlap with the physiologic male range. Estradiol may play a role in pelvic pain or symptoms, persistent menses, or mood symptoms. It is unclear what role estrogen blockade with aromatase inhibitors (AI) or selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERM) might play in managing these symptoms, or in routine virilizing regimens. An in-depth discussion of pelvic pain and persistent menses is covered elsewhere in these guidelines.

Interpreting sex-specific, non-hormone labs

Alkaline phosphatase, hemoglobin and hematocrit, and creatinine may vary depending on the patient's current sex hormone configuration. Several factors contribute to these differences, bone mass, muscle mass, number of myocytes, presence or lack of menstruation, and erythropoietic effect of testosterone. Many transgender men do not menstruate, and those with male-range testosterone levels will experience an erythropoietic effect. As such an amenorrheic transgender man taking testosterone, registered as female and with hemoglobin/hematocrit in the range between the male and female lower limits of normal, may be considered to have anemia, even though the lab

report may not indicate so. Conversely, the lack of menstruation, and presence of exogenous testosterone make it reasonable to use the male-range upper limit of normal for hemoglobin/hematocrit. Using the male-range upper limit of normal for alkaline phosphatase and creatinine may also be appropriate for transgender men due to increased bone and muscle mass, respectively. In these cases the provider should reference the male normal ranges for their lab.[19]

Table 3. Lower and upper limits of normal to use when interpreting selected lab tests in transgende masculinizing hormone therapy

Lab measure	Lower Limit of normal	Upper Limit of
* If menstruating regularly, consider using female lower limit of normal.		
Creatinine	Not defined	Male value
Hemoglobin/Hematocrit	Male value if amenorrheic*	Male value
Alkaline Phosphatase	Not defined	Male value

Individualized dosing based on patient centered goals

Some patients may desire limited hormone effects or a mix of masculine and feminine sex characteristics. Examples include deepening of voice or growth of a beard (both irreversible), with retention of breasts or female body habitus. Some patients may choose to undergo testosterone therapy for a period of time to develop such irreversible changes, and then discontinue testosterone and revert to their endogenous estrogen hormonal milieu. While manipulation of dosing regimens and choice of medication can allow patients to achieve individual goals, it is important to have a clear discussion with patients regarding expectations and unknowns. Specifically, it is not possible to prospectively choose a regimen that will predictably allow patients to arrive at a specified configuration of sex characteristics. Furthermore, individual genetic and physiologic variation can result in wide variations in blood levels and response to therapy between different individuals using the same route and dose. The best approach in these cases is to start with low doses

and advance slowly, titrating to effect. At the same time, response to hormone therapy is also individualized and measures such as beard growth or voice changes are variable in both degree and time course. Likely predictive factors of speed and degree of virilization include genetics and particulars of body habitus; younger age at start also likely contributes to faster progress and a greater degree of virilization once an endpoint is reached. Patients beginning hormone therapy later in life may experience more limited results. Patients should be counseled on setting reasonable expectations based on these factors, and avoid making comparisons to the experiences of others. Anecdotal sources suggest that maximal virilization may occur within 2-5 years.[20]

Specific considerations and conditions

Pelvic pain and persistent menses are covered elsewhere in these guidelines.

Post-gonadectomy: Since testosterone dosing should be based on physiologic male replacement levels, no reduction in testosterone dosing is required after gonadectomy. Some patients may choose to use a lower dose, which is appropriate as long as dosing is adequate to maintain bone density, however they should be informed of possible reduced muscle mass, energy and libido. Adequacy of dosing in those on low testosterone replacement post gonadectomy may be assessed by following LH and FSH levels and titration of dosing to maintain these in the premenopausal range.[21]

Erythrocytosis/polycythemia: Hemoglobin and hematocrit (H&H) values in transgender men should be interpreted in the context of the dose of testosterone used and menstruation status. Transgender men with physiologic male testosterone levels and who are amenorrheic would be expected to have H&H values in the male normal range. Note this may differ from the normal female range listed on the lab report if the patient is registered in the lab system as a female. Providers should reference their lab(s)' normal male range H&H, and disregard reported high flags if an amenorrheic transgender man on testosterone has an H&H above the female upper limit, but below the male upper limit. Similarly in this same patient, an H&H below the male lower limit but above the female lower limit may not be flagged as abnormal, but in reality may represent a true anemia. Patients with persistent menses or on lower doses of testosterone should have their H&H interpreted accordingly. Transgender men with true polycythemia should first have their testosterone levels checked, including a peak level, and have dose adjusted accordingly. Changing to a more frequent injection schedule (maintaining the same total amount of testosterone over time) or transdermal preparations may limit the risk of polycythemia.[16] Phlebotomy or blood donation may be an appropriate short term solution depending on the level of elevation; in all cases other pathologic causes of polycythemia should be excluded.

In addition to neoplasms and cardiopulmonary disease, specific conditions of concern in transgender men include obesity-related obstructive sleep apnea, and tobacco use.

Older transgender men: Older transgender men: No upper age limit exists for testosterone replacement in non-transgender men.[22] As such, there is no age recommendation for the termination of testosterone therapy in transgender men. It is reasonable to consider discontinuing hormone therapy at or around age 50, the age at which non-transgender women undergo menopause. Regardless of the presence of gonads at this age, withdrawal of testosterone will result in reduced muscle mass, body hair and libido.

Autoimmunity: There is a certain but incompletely defined linkage between sex hormones and autoimmune conditions. Testosterone has been associated with overall immune suppression, and autoimmune conditions are more common in non-transgender women than men.[23] Testosterone deprivation results in an increased Th1:Th2 ratio.[24] However the relationship is more complex, as demonstrated by the paradoxical improvements seen in multiple sclerosis during pregnancy.[23] Patients with autoimmune conditions should be informed that their condition could potentially worsen (or improve) once virilizing therapy has begun. Hormone dosing should begin low and advance slowly, monitoring for worsening symptoms, and in collaboration with any specialists who may be managing the autoimmune condition.

Migraine: Migraines have a clear hormonal component and relationship to estrogen. Given the persistence and possible fluctuation of estrogen levels in many transgender men taking testosterone, migraines may be precipitated or exacerbated in the context of testosterone therapy. Patients with a history of migraines should consider starting with a low dose and titrating upward as tolerated. Transdermal testosterone may be preferred to avoid any potential cyclic effect associated with injected testosterone.[25]

Mental health conditions: While hormones may contribute to mood disorders (such as in premenstrual dysphoric disorder or postpartum depression), these is no clear evidence that testosterone therapy is directly associated with the onset of or worsening of mental health conditions. In fact it has been found that transgender men experience improvements in social functioning and reduced anxiety and depression once testosterone therapy is begun.[26,27] Mental health conditions in transgender men should be approached with a broad differential diagnosis as in any other patient, taking caution to avoid relating all symptoms directly to gender dysphoria or testosterone therapy. Consider using a non-injected medication form to avoid the potentially cyclic levels, which could bring about or worsen existing mood symptoms.

Testosterone therapy in patients with a prior history of cancer: An active sex hormone-sensitive cancer is an absolute contraindication to testosterone therapy. For patients with a prior history of hormone sensitive cancer (i.e. breast), consultation with an oncologist is recommended.

Hair Loss: Hair loss may begin soon after beginning hormone therapy, and is dependent on genetic factors. There are two patterns of hair loss seen in transgender men; Frontal and temporal recession, and male-pattern baldness (receding at the forehead and thinning at the crown). Both forms may cause alarm for patients, and in some cases result in a desire to discontinue therapy. Patients should be counseled prior to initiation of therapy on the risk, unpredictable nature, extent and time course of this condition. Management is similar to that in non-transgender men. Over the counter minoxidil, 5-alpha reductase inhibitors, and surgical approaches may be used. The 5-alpha reductase inhibitor finasteride blocks conversion of testosterone to the potent androgen dihydrotestosterone.[28] Finasteride 1mg daily (Propecia) is approved for male pattern baldness, while the 5mg daily dose (Proscar) is approved for management of prostatic hypertrophy.[29] Side effects may include reduced libido or sexual dysfunction, though impact on erectile function (manifesting as genital engorgement) may be less relevant for transgender men who have not undergone metoidioplasty. In general, the 1mg daily dose has minimal sexual side effects. The negative impact on results of 5-alpha reductase inhibition on transgender men early in their course of testosterone therapy is unknown. As with non-transgender men, use of the 5mg daily dose of finasteride, or use of the more potent 5-alpha reductase inhibitor dutasteride, may result in excessive testosterone blockade, and resultant sexual side effects and regression of some virilization.

Metabolic syndrome and related conditions (obesity, hyperlipidemia, impaired glucose tolerance, polycystic ovarian syndrome/PCOS): Cardiovascular and diabetes considerations are covered elsewhere in these guidelines. Polycystic ovarian syndrome can manifest with any combination of impaired fasting glucose, dyslipidemias, hirsutism, obesity, and oligo- or amenorrhea with anovulation. Some of these features (hirsutism, oligo- or amenorrhea) may be welcomed by transgender men and present prior to testosterone administration. Testosterone administration is not contraindicated in the presence of PCOS, but patients should be monitored for hyperlipidemia and diabetes. Transgender men with amenorrhea in the presence of testosterone are not believed to be at elevated risk of endometrial hyperplasia, due to the atrophic effects of testosterone on the endometrium (Grading T O M).[30,31] It may be prudent to pursue endometrial evaluation prior to initiation of testosterone in transgender men with a current history of amenorrhea/oligomenorrhea. Testosterone replacement in non-transgender men is associated with an increased risk of obstructive

sleep apnea (OSA).[22] It is unknown whether OSA is increased in transgender men after the initiation of testosterone. However, the behavioral health improvements seen with testosterone therapy may result in positive lifestyle changes that reduce obesity, disorders of glucose metabolism, or hyperlipidemia. In all but the most severe cases (diabetes out of control, active unstable coronary artery disease), transgender men should be informed of risks, and if testosterone therapy continues to be desired, it should be continued with concurrent conventional management of metabolic disorders and their sequelae (Grading: X C S).

Metabolic syndrome and related conditions (obesity, hyperlipidemia, impaired glucose tolerance, polycystic ovarian syndrome/PCOS): Cardiovascular and diabetes considerations are covered elsewhere in these guidelines. Polycystic ovarian syndrome can manifest with any combination of impaired fasting glucose, dyslipidemias, hirsutism, obesity, and oligo- or amenorrhea with anovulation. Some of these features (hirsutism, oligo- or amenorrhea) may be welcomed by transgender men and present prior to testosterone administration. Testosterone administration is not contraindicated in the presence of PCOS, but patients should be monitored for hyperlipidemia and diabetes. **Transgender men with amenorrhea in the presence of testosterone are not believed to be at elevated risk of endometrial hyperplasia, due to the atrophic effects of testosterone on the endometrium (Grading T O M).**[30,31] It may be prudent to pursue endometrial evaluation prior to initiation of testosterone in transgender men with a current history of amenorrhea/oligomenorrhea. Testosterone replacement in non-transgender men is associated with an increased risk of obstructive sleep apnea (OSA).[22] It is unknown whether OSA is increased in transgender men after the initiation of testosterone. However, the behavioral health improvements seen with testosterone therapy may result in positive lifestyle changes that reduce obesity, disorders of glucose metabolism, or hyperlipidemia. In all but the most severe cases (diabetes out of control, active unstable coronary artery disease), transgender men should be informed of risks, and if testosterone therapy continues to be desired, it should be continued with concurrent conventional management of metabolic disorders and their sequelae (Grading: X C S).

Acne: Acne of the face and body are common side effects of virilizing hormone therapy. Approach to symptom management is consistent with established practices in non-transgender people. Patients can be reassured that acne tends to peak in the first year of testosterone therapy, and then declines.[32] Maintaining physiologic testosterone levels, and avoiding excessive peaks associated with prolonged injection dosing intervals may help minimize acne.

Hormone therapy information for patients

- Testosterone hormone therapy overview

About consent forms for hormone therapy:

Informed consent is a process which occurs between a patient and a provider. The process should include an individualized discussion of the risks, benefits, unknowns, alternatives, and risk of no treatment. We are no longer recommending the use of consent forms for hormone therapy. Many other common interventions such as contraception or HIV pre-exposure prophylaxis do not involve the use of consent forms, and rely on a discussion and shared decision making between patient and provider. If the informed consent process is properly documented in the chart, consent forms do not likely provide any additional legal protections to the provider. Elimination of consent forms helps to demystify and destigmatize hormone therapy. Providers can use the information provided in these guidelines to frame their individualized discussions with patients.

References

1. Light AD, Obedin-Maliver J, Sevelius JM, Kerns JL. Transgender men who experienced pregnancy after female-to-male gender transitioning. Obstet Gynecol. 2014 Dec;124(6):1120-7.
2. Jacobeit JW, Gooren LJ, Schulte HM. Safety aspects of 36 months of administration of long-acting intramuscular testosterone undecanoate for treatment of female-to-male transgender individuals. Eur J Endocrinol. 2009 Nov 1;161(5):795-8.
3. Mueller A, Kiesewetter F, Binder H, Beckmann MW, Dittrich R. Long-term administration of testosterone undecanoate every 3 months for testosterone supplementation in female-to-male transsexuals. J Clin Endocrinol Amp Metab. 2007 Sep;92(9):3470-5.
4. Olson J, Schrager SM, Clark LF, Dunlap SL, Belzer M. Subcutaneous testosterone: an effective delivery mechanism for masculinizing young transgender men(link is external). LGBT Health. 2014 Jun 26 [cited 2014 Jul 18];
5. Al-Futaisi AM, Al-Zakwani IS, Almahrezi AM, Morris D. Subcutaneous administration of testosterone. A pilot study report. Saudi Med J. 2006 Dec;27(12):1843-6.
6. Bhasin S, Cunningham GR, Hayes FJ, Matsumoto AM, Snyder PJ, Swerdloff RS, et al. Testosterone therapy in men with androgen deficiency syndromes: an endocrine society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2010 Jun 1;95(6):2536-59.

7. Roberts TK, Kraft CS, French D, Ji W, Wu AHB, Tangpricha V, et al. Interpreting laboratory results in transgender patients on hormone therapy. Am J Med. 2014 Feb;127(2):159-62.

8. Ly LP, Handelsman DJ. Empirical estimation of free testosterone from testosterone and sex hormone-binding globulin immunoassays. Eur J Endocrinol Eur Fed Endocr Soc. 2005 Mar;152(3):471-8.

9. Rosner W, Auchus RJ, Azziz R, Sluss PM, Raff H. Position statement: Utility, limitations, and pitfalls in measuring testosterone: an Endocrine Society position statement. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2007 Feb;92(2):405-13.

10. Serin IS, Ozçelik B, BaŞbuğ M, Aygen E, Kula M, Erez R. Long-term effects of continuous oral and transdermal estrogen replacement therapy on sex hormone binding globulin and free testosterone levels. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 2001 Dec 1;99(2):222-5.

11. Hembree WC, Cohen-Kettenis P, Delemarre-van de Waal HA, Gooren LJ, Meyer WJ, Spack NP, et al. Endocrine treatment of transsexual persons: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2009 Jun 9;94(9):3132-54.

12. Carnegie C. Diagnosis of Hypogonadism: Clinical assessments and laboratory tests. Rev Urol. 2004;6(Suppl 6):S3-8.

13. Sih R, Morley JE, Kaiser FE, Perry HM, Patrick P, Ross C. Testosterone replacement in older hypogonadal men: a 12-month randomized controlled trial. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1997 Jun;82(6):1661-7.

14. Korenman SG, Morley JE, Mooradian AD, Davis SS, Kaiser FE, Silver AJ, et al. Secondary hypogonadism in older men: its relation to impotence. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1990 Oct;71(4):963-9.

15. Nelson R, O'Kane D, Heser D, Klee G. A simple and rapid assay for bioavailable-testosterone. Clin Chem. 2001 Jun;47(6):A20-A20.

16. Bui HN, Schagen SEE, Klink DT, Delemarre-van de Waal HA, Blankenstein MA, Heijboer AC. Salivary testosterone in female-to-male transgender adolescents during treatment with intra-muscular injectable testosterone esters. Steroids. 2013 Jan;78(1):91-5.

17. Dobs AS, Meikle AW, Arver S, Sanders SW, Caramelli KE, Mazer NA. Pharmacokinetics, efficacy, and safety of a permeation-enhanced testosterone transdermal system in comparison with bi-weekly injections of testosterone

enanthate for the treatment of hypogonadal men. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 1999 Oct;84(10):3469-8.

18. Deutsch MB, Bhakri V, Kubicek K. Effects of cross-sex hormone treatment on transgender women and men. Obstet Gynecol. 2015 Mar;125(3):605-10.
19. Roberts TK, Kraft CS, French D, Ji W, Wu AHB, Tangpricha V, et al. Interpreting laboratory results in transgender patients on hormone therapy. Am J Med. 2014 Feb;127(2):159-62.
20. Coleman E, Bockting W, Botzer M, Cohen-Kettenis P, DeCuypere G, Feldman J, et al. Standards of Care for the Health of Transsexual, Transgender, and Gender-Nonconforming People, Version 7. Int J Transgenderism. 2012;13(4):165-232.
21. Esteva I, Yahyaoui R, Cano G, Giraldo F, Bergero T, Ruiz de Adana S, et al. Evolution of gonadal axis after sex reassignment surgery in transsexual patients in the Spanish public health system. Int J Transgenderism. 2006 Jun 1;9(2):15-22.
22. Bhasin S, Cunningham GR, Hayes FJ, Matsumoto AM, Snyder PJ, Swerdloff RS, et al. Testosterone therapy in men with androgen deficiency syndromes: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2010 Jun 1;95(6):2536-59.
23. Gold SM, Voskuhl RR. Estrogen and testosterone therapies in multiple sclerosis. In: Progress in Brain Research(link is external). Elsevier; 2009 [cited 2015 Nov 21]. p. 239-51.
24. Trigunaite A, Dimo J, Jørgensen TN. Suppressive effects of androgens on the immune system. Cell Immunol. 2015 Apr;294(2):87-94.
25. Chai NC, Peterlin BL, Calhoun AH. Migraine and estrogen. Curr Opin Neurol. 2014 Jun;27(3):315-24.
26. Gómez-Gil E, Zubiaurre-Elorza L, Esteva I, Guillamon A, Godás T, Cruz Almaraz M, et al. Hormone-treated transsexuals report less social distress, anxiety and depression. Psychoneuroendocrinology. 2012 May;37(5):662-70.
27. Meier SLC, Fitzgerald KM, Pardo ST, Babcock J. The effects of hormonal gender affirmation treatment on mental health in female-to-male transsexuals. J Gay Lesbian Ment Health. 2011;15(3):281-99.
28. Rittmaster RS. 5alpha-reductase inhibitors. J Androl. 1997 Dec;18(6):582-7.

29. Traish AM, Hassani J, Guay AT, Zitzmann M, Hansen ML. Adverse side effects of 5?-reductase inhibitors therapy: persistent diminished libido and erectile dysfunction and depression in a subset of patients. J Sex Med. 2011 Mar;8(3):872-84.

30. Grynberg M, Fanchin R, Dubost G, Colau J-C, Brémont-Weil C, Frydman R, et al. Histology of genital tract and breast tissue after long-term testosterone administration in a female-to-male transsexual population. Reprod Biomed Online. 2010 Apr;20(4):553-8.

31. Perrone AM, Cerpolini S, Maria Salfi NC, Ceccarelli C, De Giorgi LB, Formelli G, et al. Effect of long-term testosterone administration on the endometrium of female-to-male (FtM) transsexuals. J Sex Med. 2009 Nov;6(11):3193-200.

32. Wierckx K, Van de Peer F, Verhaeghe E, Dedecker D, Van Caenegem E, Toye K, et al. Short- and long-term clinical skin effects of testosterone treatment in trans men. J Sex Med. 2014 Jan;11(1):222-9.

Pelvic Pain and Persistent Menses

Introduction: Pelvic Pain

Pelvic pain in transgender men can be a clinical challenge and has a broad differential diagnosis. Pelvic pain less than 6 months of duration is considered acute. Chronic pelvic pain, which is continuous or episodic pain in the lower abdomen or pelvis lasting more than 6 months, has a large differential.[1] History is a critical component to assessment and diagnosis. Key to the history is a detailed description of pain including onset, precipitating and palliating features, quality, radiation, severity and timing. A pain diary can be helpful to elucidate pain pattern and features and there are many available online.

The general approach to the workup of pelvic pain in transgender men is similar to that for non-transgender women. An anatomic approach to history gathering that considers urological, gynecologic, gastrointestinal, musculoskeletal, and psychological components is critical. Specific etiologies may be multifactorial, such as post-surgical adhesions with or without gastrointestinal symptoms, or endometriosis and/or pelvic floor muscle dysfunction. It is also critical to assess quality of life impact and determine what the patient would consider a favorable outcome. Most evaluation and treatment guidelines stress that chronic pelvic pain can be a diagnostic and therapeutic challenge, and success will depend on comprehensive and customized evaluation and multidisciplinary care.[2,3]

Etiologies

Specific medical etiologies to consider in transgender men include: atrophic or infectious vaginitis, cervicitis, cystitis, STIs, adhesions, post-surgical sequelae, musculoskeletal

disorders, and neurogenic. Specific behavioral etiologies to consider include: depression, history of emotional trauma (including sexual assault or abuse, adverse childhood events),[4] and post-traumatic stress disorder. The use of testosterone has a dose dependent effect on vaginal tissue by inducing a hypoestrogenic state which promotes atrophy, increases vaginal pH and thus increases the risk of vaginitis and cervicitis. Additionally, transgender men may have decreased access to or utilization of screening and therefore treatment for cervicitis and sexually transmitted infections.[5-7] Prior surgery may cause adhesions, scar tissue, bladder dysfunction, or nerve injury, which may lead to a lack of visceral mobility and contribute to pain.[8] It is unclear to what extent post-surgical adhesions cause pain independently, or via secondary mechanisms such as constriction or incarceration of other organs. Transgender men who have pelvic pain after hysterectomy but have retained one or both ovaries/gonads should be screened for a gonadal pathology. The interaction between a genotypic female skeleton and increased muscle mass as a result of testosterone therapy may result in changes in postural carriage. Additionally, recent and/or history of sexual trauma may be exacerbated among those with gender minority status. Engaging with medical professionals can be re-traumatizing in this setting; in all cases a trauma informed approach(link is external) should be taken.[9]

Taking a pelvic pain history

The initial history should include a menstrual history including age of onset, frequency of menses or cyclical menstrual-like symptoms even if amenorrheic, duration of menses, last menstrual period, and if amenorrheic, for how long. Also assess for use of pain medication, and any association with testosterone dosing cycles. A comprehensive sexual history, including assessing for specific behaviors with other individuals such as (vaginal-vaginal), vaginal or anal or receptive penile sex, recognizing that many transgender men may engage in receptive vaginal sex.[10] Assess for potential risk of pregnancy and ectopic pregnancy; transgender men who have receptive vaginal sex with a partner with sperm are at risk for unintended pregnancy, including ovulation and conception without preceding menstrual bleeding. Also note any history of pelvic inflammatory disease. A surgical history should note for history of an open, laparoscopic or vaginal approach to inform suspicions of scar tissue and adhesions and subsequent symptomatology. Note any specific risks such as a ruptured appendix or history of pelvic inflammatory disease (PID). Other history should include screens for adverse childhood events, current domestic violence, and for substance use and overuse, including tobacco.

Physical exam

On exam assess for involvement of various abdominopelvic organs, including a check for costo-vertebral angle tenderness, palpation of the abdominal wall, noting any particular

tenderness along prior surgical scars or point tenderness along scars or the abdominal wall in general. Palpate the bladder for localized sensitivity, and palpate the abdomen for visceral organ involvement. Consider a speculum exam only if clearly indicated, noting vaginal discharge or any evidence of vaginitis, and assess the general condition of vaginal tissues and the cervix. If a pelvic exam is necessary, consider starting with a pediatric speculum. If a bimanual exam is performed, note any cervical, adnexal or ovarian tenderness to palpation.[5] Also assess sensation in the vulvar area with cotton tipped nerve testing as well as sharp/dull differentiation, and examine of the pelvic floor via palpation of the obturator internus (two-digit exam with palpation of muscles at 4 to 5 o'clock and 7 to 8 o'clock; pain on flexion of the two fingers at these locations suggests pelvic floor dysfunction). Also if indicated consider a rectal exam, noting masses, tenderness, or hardened stool. Laboratory testing includes a urinalysis and culture, testing for Chlamydia and gonorrhea, vaginal pH, vaginal wet mount and KOH prep, and possibly a vaginal culture. A pregnancy test should be considered, however some patients who are not sexually active with someone capable of insemination may be offended by the suggestion of this test. It is best to explain to patients in advance that this test is part of a standard protocol, and if it is certain that pregnancy is not possible based on sexual behaviors, a pregnancy test may be omitted. Imaging should be performed using transabdominal or transvaginal ultrasound; in those men who have had a vaginectomy, a transrectal ultrasound may be an option. Some transgender men may decline vaginal ultrasound and/or bimanual exams due to potential exacerbation of gender dysphoria. These patients should not be forced to undergo a pelvic examination. In these cases proceed with an abdominal exam as well as laboratory and transabdominal ultrasound for the initial workup. Specifically for transgender men, critical components of the assessment include timing of pain and associated symptoms in relation to initiation of testosterone therapy, moliminal timing (symptoms in relation to an expected menstrual cycle) even in the presence of amenorrhea, and a detailed history of prior surgeries and related organ inventory.

Testosterone-induced dyspareunia, vaginitis, and cervicitis

The use of testosterone often results in estrogen deficient, atrophic vaginal tissues akin to a post-menopausal state in cisgender women.[11-13] These atrophic vaginal tissues represent a decline in tissue resilience, skin barrier function, and increased susceptibility to altered microbial environment and resistance which may result in bacterial vaginosis, cystitis, or cervicitis.[14] Additionally, thin atrophic vaginal tissues are more susceptible to traumatic irritation from friction and sexual contact,[13] which may result in atrophic dyspareunia or vaginitis. Symptoms are often described as "rough" "sand-paper" and "burning" or "dry" vaginal irritation. Visual inspection consistent with atrophy will

demonstrate thin pale tissues, a loss of rugae, loss of elasticity, friability, and dryness. It is also possible to find hyperemic, deep red vaginal tissue. Bacterial vaginosis is more common in the estrogen-deprived state. Wet mount, vaginal culture, vaginal pH and STI testing can aid in directing treatment. Interstitial cystitis should be considered when infectious causes have been rules out and symptoms localize to the urinary bladder. Vaginal estrogen to treat underlying atrophy may be warranted and a short course may be successful in restoring comfort. Patients may be reassured that vaginal estrogen is associated with minimal systemic absorption and should not interfere with the desired effects of Testosterone. Other therapeutic approaches may include vaginal lubricants or vaginal moisturizers.[15]

Cyclic symptoms relating to testosterone dosing

Transgender men on testosterone may complain of pain that is associated with cyclical testosterone dosing, pelvic, and/or vaginal pain with penetration (with penis, fingers, dildo, etc.), or orgasmic pain. The etiology of post-testosterone administration cramping is unclear. In one cross-sectional study 20% of respondents had a hysterectomy to decrease post-testosterone cramping and another 22% to stop "extreme bleeding and cramping."[16] Trauma informed care can be effective, as are other treatments used for chronic pelvic pain such as pelvic floor therapy, vaginal lubrication with unscented products, or the use of tricyclic antidepressants.

Co-occurring mental health conditions

As with any pain syndrome, patients with chronic pelvic pain should be evaluated for depression and post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD). These conditions may be simultaneously present in up to 35% of non-transgender female patients with chronic pelvic pain.[1] Multiple studies link adverse childhood events with increased incidence of chronic pain and depression. Pre-existing depression may exacerbate pelvic pain. Conversely, pelvic pain and living with a chronic pain condition may result in depression. A high percentage of those who have undergone sexual assault develop PTSD, and many of those who have PTSD may develop pelvic floor muscle dysfunction and pain.[17,18] The presence of pelvic pain as well as the related workup and evaluation may trigger PTSD, especially if such trauma relates to a prior sexual assault or otherwise involves the lower abdomen and pelvis. These symptoms may be even greater in transgender men for whom examination of genital and reproductive organs may be particularly challenging and triggering of gender dysphoria, and result in avoidance of pelvic exams.[19] Collaboration with a specialist in mental health can be an important adjunct to pathophysiological evaluation and treatment.

Pharmacologic management

The initial approach to management should include NSAIDS, with other pain management medications used as indicated and appropriate. Changing to a more even testosterone transdermal testosterone regimen, or adding a progestogen such as the levonorgestrel IUD may address underlying hormonal causes.

Role of hysterectomy

In addition to non-surgical approaches, in some cases hysterectomy may have a role in the management of pelvic pain. **Depending on the preferences and reproductive goals of an individual patient, gynecologists may revise their therapeutic approach to consider hysterectomy earlier than they might in non-transgender women (Grading: X C S)**. At the same time hysterectomy should not be viewed as a cure-all, and in some cases is not effective in improving pain. For this reason, transgender men with pelvic pain must be evaluated on a case-by-case basis due to the lack of evidence-based guidance at this time. Decision to perform oophorectomy should be based on the etiology of pelvic pain, presence of comorbidities, future fertility desires, and any future plans to stop taking testosterone.

Management of specific symptoms and syndromes

If pain is vulvar and there are no identifiable lesions or infections, Consider the use of topical 2-5% topical lidocaine placed on soaked cotton-ball and left in the vestibule overnight for general pain relief, or for 30 minutes prior to sexual activity as desired.

If pain is vulvar and exam is consistent with vaginal atrophy in the setting of testosterone administration, consider a short course of vaginal estrogen in doses and administration similar to that used for post-menopausal non-transgender women. Patients who are uncomfortable with intravaginal use may be instructed to place treatment cream on their external genitalia. Choice between tablets, creams, and rings depends on patient preference and formulary considerations.[20]

If pain is triggered by pelvic floor muscle palpation, consider referral to pelvic floor physical therapy, pelvic floor relaxation exercises, and even guided instruction on massage using self or partner's fingers or a massage tool.

If pain is abdominal, present in the abdominal wall or associated with abdominal scar tissue, consider treatment with 1% lidocaine instilled at trigger points in repeated administration.

If transvaginal ultrasound is required, consider a low-dose benzodiazepine such as lorazepam 0.5mg orally, 30 minutes prior to the procedure, in coordination with

administration of 2-5% lidocaine ointment applied to the vulva and vagina 10 minutes prior to the procedure. Some patients may feel safer and more comfortable placing the ultrasound probe intra-vaginally themselves. These approaches may also be used in advance of a pelvic examination.

Introduction: Persistent menses and unexpected vaginal bleeding

Many transgender men chose not to undergo hysterectomy, oophorectomy and/or gender affirming genital procedures.[19,21,22] For transgender men of reproductive age undergoing transition without hormones, or those whom have used testosterone and later discontinued it due to unwanted side effects such as balding, menses would be expected to be within standard reference ranges from 21-35 days between cycles with no inter-menstrual bleeding and lasting on average 2-6 days and ceasing on average at age 49.[23] Variation from these ranges warrants further gynecological investigation.

For those transgender men using physiologic doses of testosterone, cessation of menses is expected, typically within 6 months. Cessation of menses is driven by a combination of testosterone induced ovulation suppression, which may be incomplete, and endometrial atrophy.[12] However, the time to cessation of menses may vary. Factors that affect time to cessation of menses likely include: dose of testosterone, route of administration, frequency of testosterone administration, presence and functioning of ovaries, body habitus, and the presence of other structural or non-structural medical conditions of the uterus or ovaries. Transgender men with a history of abnormal cycles prior to initiating testosterone (e.g. frequent cycles, heavy irregular bleeding) may have underlying pathology, which could result in a prolonged or complicated path to cessation of menses once on testosterone. Therefore in patients with risk factors for endometrial hyperplasia and a degree of clinical suspicion, evaluation for and elimination of known causes of irregular bleeding should be considered concurrent with testosterone administration; those with pre-existing amenorrhea or oligomenorrhea may require evaluation for endometrial abnormalities prior to initiating testosterone. This includes ruling out pregnancy in transmen who are sexually active with partners who produce sperm.

Etiologies

Abnormal uterine bleeding (AUB) may be considered present in those who have continued bleeding after 6-12 months of male-range testosterone levels and suppressed LH and FSH. AUB may be related to a variety of structural and non-structural causes. These causes can be summarized by the internationally recognized Federation of Gynecology and Obstetrics (FIGO) PALM-COEIN classification system.[24] Structural causes of AUB include: endometrial polyps, adenomyosis, leiomyomata, endometrial hyperplasia, or malignancy.

As a group these are best evaluated with imaging and endometrial biopsy. Despite prior suggestions that endometrial cancer risk may be increased in transgender men on testosterone,[25] longer-term data do not support this risk.[26] Non-structural causes of AUB include: pregnancy, coagulopathy, ovulatory dysfunction, endometrial, or iatrogenic causes. While the gold standard for pelvic imaging is transvaginal ultrasound, other approaches such as a sonohysterogram, transabdominal ultrasound, CT scan, or MRI may be warranted. Both structural and non-structural causes should be investigated in consultation with a gynecologist. The decision to pursue transvaginal ultrasonography or endometrial biopsy should not be taken lightly in transgender men who may find these procedures invasive. Noninvasive diagnostic approaches such as watchful waiting for induction of amenorrhea 6 months after initiation of testosterone, observing for a withdrawal bleed after a progestin challenge, or use of a transabdominal approach to ultrasonography should all be considered. Persistent menses despite testosterone may also be related to body habitus; those with higher levels of body adipose tissue have higher endogenous estrogen levels and increased conversion of testosterone to estradiol through the peripheral aromatization process.

Therapeutic approaches based on etiology

Increasing the dosage and frequency of dosing (1 and 2 weeks) of intramuscular testosterone has been found to be positively correlated with rapidity of amenorrhea induction.[27] The time to cessation of menses has been reported as ranging from 1-13 months [27-31] and in addition to individual genetic and physiologic factors may very well depend on the formulation or route of testosterone administration.[28]

Physiologically, amenorrhea induction rates should correlate to increased testosterone levels (to physiologic male range) as well as possible decreased estrogen levels seen with androgen therapy, however many will achieve amenorrhea despite elevated estrogen levels and sub-physiologic male testosterone levels. For example, one study of transgender men presenting for initiation of cross-sex hormones found that 84% of those completing the study were amenorrheic at 6 months. This was despite many only 58% achieving physiologic male total testosterone levels and 68% achieving physiologic male free testosterone levels.[30] However in the setting of persistent menses, adjustment of hormone regimen and dosing may be appropriate. The addition of an oral, injected, implanted, or intrauterine (IUD) progestogen may serve as an adjunct to induction of amenorrhea. Endometrial ablation can be considered [31] for those transgender men who do not desire future fertility and who also either decline hysterectomy or have surgical complications. The levonorgestrel intrauterine system (IUS/IUD), which in non-transgender women can either significantly decrease menstrual flow or fully induce amenorrhea, has

the added contraceptive benefit for those at risk since some may still ovulate despite male physiologic testosterone levels.[32]

Aromatase inhibitors (AIs) such as anastrazole or letrozole may be considered as short-term adjunctive therapy in achieving amenorrhea for those with persistent menses on testosterone. Aromatase is expressed throughout the body including the ovaries, endometrium, skin, bone, breast, brain and adipose tissue. AIs have been used for the treatment of estrogen receptor positive breast cancer, endometriosis, and ovulation induction. AIs have also been shown to reduce vaginal bleeding and pelvic pain in combination with other hormone therapies such as progestins or combined oral contraceptives.[33-35] In non-transgender women, treatment with AIs without add-back estrogen therapy has led to symptoms of medical menopause: hot-flashes, arthralgias, mood disturbances, fatigue, vaginal dryness, decreased bone mineral density, and fractures.[36] In transgender men concurrently using testosterone, these symptoms may be attenuated or even absent.

What remains unclear is the AI dose necessary in the setting of male-range testosterone levels in comparison with the roughly 10-fold lower physiological female estrogen levels released by the ovaries. Since AIs have been used for ovulation induction, contraception should be considered in transgender men who may be at risk for pregnancy. Weight loss plays a critical role in all cases for health promotion as well as resulting in amenorrhea through reduction of adipose containing aromatase.

Helpful resources

- International Pelvic Pain Society(link is external)
- American Physical Therapy Association(link is external)

References

1. Abercrombie PD, Learman LA. Providing holistic care for women with chronic pelvic pain. J Obstet Gynecol Neonatal Nurs. 2012 Oct;41(5):668-79.
2. Jarrell JF, Vilos GA, Allaire C, Burgess S, Fortin C, Gerwin R, et al. Consensus guidelines for the management of chronic pelvic pain. J Obstet Gynaecol Can JOGC J Obstétrique Gynécologie Can JOGC. 2005 Aug;27(8):781-826.
3. Miller-Matero LR, Saulino C, Clark S, Bugenski M, Eshelman A, Eisenstein D. When treating the pain is not enough: a multidisciplinary approach for chronic pelvic pain. Arch Womens Ment Health. 2016 Apr;19(2):349-54.

4. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Adverse Childhood Experiences (ACEs) Study(link is external). Injury Prevention and Control: Division of Violence Prevention. [cited 2016 Apr 26].
5. Workowski KA, Bolan GA, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention. Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2015. MMWR Recomm Rep Morb Mortal Wkly Rep Recomm Rep Cent Dis Control. 2015 Jun 5;64(RR-03):1-137.
6. Reisner SL, White Hughto JM, Pardee D, Sevelius J. Syndemics and gender affirmation: HIV sexual risk in female-to-male trans masculine adults reporting sexual contact with cisgender males. Int J STD AIDS. 2015 Sep 18;
7. Sevelius J. "There's no pamphlet for the kind of sex I have:" HIV-related risk factors and protective behaviors among transgender men who have sex with nontransgender men. J Assoc Nurses AIDS Care JANAC. 2009 Oct;20(5):398-410.
8. Practice Committee of American Society for Reproductive Medicine in collaboration with Society of Reproductive Surgeons. Pathogenesis, consequences, and control of peritoneal adhesions in gynecologic surgery: a committee opinion. Fertil Steril. 2013 May;99(6):1550-5.
9. Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). Trauma-informed approach and trauma-specific interventions(link is external) . 2015 [cited 2016 Mar 25].
10. Scheim AI, Bauer GR. Sex and gender diversity among transgender persons in Ontario, Canada: results from a respondent-driven sampling survey. J Sex Res. 2015 Jan 2;52(1):1-14.
11. Miller N, Bédard YC, Cooter NB, Shaul DL. Histological changes in the genital tract in transsexual women following androgen therapy. Histopathology. 1986 Jul;10(7):661-9.
12. Perrone AM, Cerpolini S, Maria Salfi NC, Ceccarelli C, De Giorgi LB, Formelli G, et al. Effect of long-term testosterone administration on the endometrium of female-to-male (FtM) transsexuals. J Sex Med. 2009 Nov;6(11):3193-200.
13. Kao A, Binik YM, Kapuscinski A, Khalife S. Dyspareunia in postmenopausal women: a critical review. Pain Res Manag J Can Pain Soc J Société Can Pour Trait Douleur. 2008 Jun;13(3):243-54.
14. Stika CS. Atrophic vaginitis. Dermatol Ther. 2010 Oct;23(5):514-22.

15. Weber MA, Kleijn MH, Langendam M, Limpens J, Heineman MJ, Roovers JP. Local oestrogen for pelvic floor disorders: a systematic review. PLoS ONE. 2015 Sep 18;10(9):e0136265.

16. Rachlin K, Hansbury G, Pardo ST. Hysterectomy and oophorectomy experiences of female-to-male transgender individuals. Int J Transgenderism. 2010 Oct 12;12(3):155-66.

17. Postma R, Bicanic I, van der Vaart H, Laan E. Pelvic floor muscle problems mediate sexual problems in young adult rape victims. J Sex Med. 2013 Aug;10(8):1978-87.

18. Wuest J, Merritt-Gray M, Ford-Gilboe M, Lent B, Varcoe C, Campbell JC. Chronic pain in women survivors of intimate partner violence. J Pain Off J Am Pain Soc. 2008 Nov;9(11):1049-57.

19. Rachlin K, Green J, Lombardi E. Utilization of health care among female-to-male transgender individuals in the United States. J Homosex. 2008;54(3):243?58.

20. Minkin MJ, Maamari R, Reiter S. Postmenopausal vaginal atrophy: evaluation of treatment with local estrogen therapy. Int J Womens Health. 2014;6:281?8.

21. Grant JM, Mottet LA, Tanis J, Harrison J, Herman J, Keisling M. Injustice at every turn: a report of the National Transgender Discrimination Survey . National Center for Transgender Equality and National Gay and Lesbian Task Force(link is external); 2011 [cited 2016 Mar 17].

22. Newfield E, Hart S, Dibble S, Kohler L. Female-to-male transgender quality of life. Qual Life Res. 2006 Jun 7;15(9):1447?57.

23. Tom SE, Cooper R, Patel KV, Guralnik JM. Menopausal characteristics and physical functioning in older adulthood in the National Health and Nutrition Examination Survey III. Menopause N Y N. 2012 Mar;19(3):283-9.

24. Munro MG, Critchley HOD, Broder MS, Fraser IS, FIGO Working Group on Menstrual Disorders. FIGO classification system (PALM-COEIN) for causes of abnormal uterine bleeding in nongravid women of reproductive age. Int J Gynaecol Obstet Off Organ Int Fed Gynaecol Obstet. 2011 Apr;113(1):3?13.

25. World Professional Association for Transgender Health (WPATH)(link is external). Standards of care for the health of transsexual, transgender, and gender nonconforming people, 7th Version. WPATH; 2012 [cited 2016 Mar 10].

26. Wierckx K, Mueller S, Weyers S, Van Caenegem E, Roef G, Heylens G, et al. Long-term evaluation of cross-sex hormone treatment in transsexual persons. J Sex Med. 2012 Oct 1;9(10):2641-51.

27. Nakamura A, Watanabe M, Sugimoto M, Sako T, Mahmood S, Kaku H, et al. Dose-response analysis of testosterone replacement therapy in patients with female to male gender identity disorder. Endocr J. 2013;60(3):275-81.

28. Pelusi C, Costantino A, Martelli V, Lambertini M, Bazzocchi A, Ponti F, et al. Effects of three different testosterone formulations in female-to-male transsexual persons. J Sex Med. 2014 Dec;11(12):3002-11.

29. Light AD, Obedin-Maliver J, Sevelius JM, Kerns JL. Transgender men who experienced pregnancy after female-to-male gender transitioning. Obstet Gynecol. 2014 Dec;124(6):1120-7.

30. Deutsch MB, Bhakri V, Kubicek K. Effects of cross-sex hormone treatment on transgender women and men. Obstet Gynecol. 2015 Mar;125(3):605-10.

31. Hembree WC, Cohen-Kettenis P, Delemarre-van de Waal HA, Gooren LJ, Meyer WJ 3rd, Spack NP, et al. Endocrine treatment of transsexual persons: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2009 Sep;94(9):3132-54.

32. Bauer GR, Redman N, Bradley K, Scheim AI. Sexual health of trans men who are gay, bisexual, or who have sex with men: results from Ontario, Canada. Int J Transgenderism. 2013 Apr;14(2):66-74.

33. Ferrero S, Gillott DJ, Venturini PL, Remorgida V. Use of aromatase inhibitors to treat endometriosis-related pain symptoms: a systematic review. Reprod Biol Endocrinol RBE. 2011;9:89.

34. Amsterdam LL, Gentry W, Jobanputra S, Wolf M, Rubin SD, Bulun SE. Anastrazole and oral contraceptives: a novel treatment for endometriosis. Fertil Steril. 2005 Aug;84(2):300-4.

35. Ailawadi RK, Jobanputra S, Kataria M, Gurates B, Bulun SE. Treatment of endometriosis and chronic pelvic pain with letrozole and norethindrone acetate: a pilot study. Fertil Steril. 2004 Feb;81(2):290-6.

36. Howell A, Cuzick J, Baum M, Buzdar A, Dowsett M, Forbes JF, et al. Results of the ATAC (Arimidex, Tamoxifen, Alone or in Combination) trial after completion of 5

years' adjuvant treatment for breast cancer. Lancet Lond Engl. 2005 Jan 1;365(9453):60-2.

Approach to Genderqueer, Gender Non-Conforming, and NB People

Terminology

With a broad spectrum of gender identities and expressions, GNB people may identify as both male and female; neither male nor female; in between genders; on or outside the gender spectrum; or beyond the gender binary system, not having a gender at all-identifying as agender or genderless. Some may simply identify as "queer," which has been reclaimed as a respectful umbrella term encompassing a broad range of gender identities, expressions, and sexual orientations. GNB people are as authentic in their gender status as transgender people who present with more binary gender identities or expressions. Nonbinary gender terms evolve and change rapidly; spelling and hyphenation vary widely. Some additional examples of terms used by GNB people include [1]:

- gender fluid
- gender ambiguous
- pangender
- neutrois
- gender bender
- gender blender
- gender smoothie
- gender expansive
- masculine of center
- feminine of center
- androgyne

Pronouns:

People who are gender nonbinary may choose to use gender neutral pronouns such as "they," "them," and "their," or other gender neutral pronouns such as "zie(ze)/hir," instead of she/her, he/his.

As with all transgender people, identifying and using the chosen name and pronoun are central to appropriate patient care. Providers are encouraged to familiarize themselves with

the diversity of pronouns which may be used by GNB people (Table 1). It is not essential to memorize the chart, and if there are any questions as to how to use and conjugate pronouns for a specific person, it is recommended that you ask for clarification. Conjugation of gender neutral pronouns are described below:

Table 1. Pronoun Reference Sheet

3rd Person Singular Subjective	3rd Person Singular Objective	3rd Person Singular Possessive	3rd Perso Reflexive
Source: Adapted from the University of Alberta Student Union			
She	Her	Her	Herself
He	Him	His	Himself
They	Them	Their	Themselv
Ze	Zir	Zir/Zirs	Zirself
Xe	Xem	Xyr/Xyrself	Xemself
Ze	Hir	Hir/Hirs	Hirself
Per	Per	Per/Pers	Perself

Transition

As with people who have binary transgender identities, the process of gender affirmation and transition for those who are nonbinary is for some limited to an internal or purely social process; for others the process may involve a variety of gender affirming medical and/or

surgical interventions. The WPATH Standards of Care Version 7 are now more inclusive of GNB identities and recognize the need for and appropriateness of an individualized approach. [2]

Specific approaches to gender affirmation for GNB people

The approach to hormone therapy should be guided by the person's desired configuration of secondary sex characteristics. Strategies may include using hormones at a lower dose or for a limited period of time. Nonbinary people on the feminine spectrum may choose to only use an androgen blocker, and/or use estrogen at a very low dose, or for a short time.

For those on the masculine spectrum, low dose testosterone can be acceptable, especially if menses is not a source of dysphoria, as low dose may not stop menses. If gender dysphoria worsens with menses, testosterone may be increased. If a GNB person does not want the degree of masculinization resulting from the higher doses of testosterone that could induce menstrual cessation, other approaches can be explored. These could include intramuscular medroxyprogesterone, the levonorgestrel intrauterine system or an etonogestrel implant, all of which also provide contraception. On occasion, masculine spectrum clients might choose continuous combined oral contraceptives for cessation of menses as well as for contraception. Surgical options for cessation of menses may include uterine ablation or hysterectomy.

It is important to remember to address reproductive and fertility considerations as part of informed consent for medical and surgical approaches, discussed in greater detail in other sections of this protocol. Limitations on the ability to predict specific outcomes with any given regimen should be discussed with GNB patients. Some desired combinations of results (such as a deepened voice without facial or body hair growth) may not be possible.

GNB persons may also pursue a variety of gender affirming surgeries and procedures, including chest reconstruction or breast augmentation and genital surgeries. A masculine spectrum nonbinary person may choose to keep their vagina when pursuing metoidioplasty; this is also an option for a more traditionally binary transgender man. A feminine spectrum nonbinary person may choose to have vaginoplasty but not desire breast development and not pursue hormonal transition; in these cases hormone replacement will be necessary after gonadectomy to maintain bone health, and surgery should only be pursued after an appropriate evaluation by an experienced and qualified mental health provider. Non-medical approaches such as packing, tucking, and binding may be central to a GNB person's expression. Some GNB people may express sharply contrasting masculine and feminine characteristics simultaneously; for example, breasts and facial hair as part of authentic expression.

Other considerations:

Challenges for the gender nonbinary person include the lack of nonbinary gender markers for documentation in medical records and in legal identification, such as passports and drivers licenses. Advocacy groups are making efforts to challenge the binary system, introducing nonbinary gender concepts and terminology into legal, medical, mental health, and educational arenas.

A more substantial discussion of gender nonbinary experiences can be found in blogs and websites (e.g., Neutrois Nonsense) [3] and books such as *Trans Bodies, Trans Selves*.[4]

Cardiovascular Disease

Introduction

Sex is an independent predictor of cardiovascular health outcomes. The role played by sex hormones in this difference between the sexes is unclear. A 2010 Cochrane analysis found no interaction between menopausal hormone therapy and all-cause mortality, cardiovascular-related mortality, non-fatal myocardial infarction or angina, or the need for bypass surgery or coronary angioplasty.[1] This same analysis found a slight increase in risk of stroke (RR 1.26, 95% CI 1.11-1.43, number needed to harm = 164); however a 2015 Cochrane update found no increased risk of stroke among the subgroup of women who began hormone therapy less than 10 years after menopause, which is more likely representative of transgender women.[2] Few studies have investigated cardiovascular disease risk and burden among transgender people on hormone therapy, adjusting for risk factors such as tobacco use. Larger studies have been retrospective and did not adjust for numerous coexisting risk factors. Prospective studies have been smaller and over shorter terms. Any analysis of the possible negative effects of hormone therapy on cardiovascular disease and stroke should take into consideration the significant benefits of hormone therapy on quality of life and psychosocial functioning.[3-5]

Evidence from several studies suggests that cardiovascular risk is unchanged among transgender men using testosterone compared with non-transgender women.[6-8] Evidence in transgender women is less clear. Some studies have found increased morbidity and mortality from myocardial infarction and stroke compared with non-transgender men, however these studies did not adjust for a number of risk factors including tobacco use, obesity, and diabetes.[6-8] Evidence from several studies suggests that cardiovascular risk is unchanged among transgender men using testosterone compared with non-transgender women.[6-8] Evidence in transgender women is less clear. Some studies have found increased morbidity and mortality from myocardial infarction and stroke compared with non-transgender men, however these studies did not adjust for a

number of risk factors including tobacco use, obesity, and diabetes.[6-8] The largest study published to date is a report on mortality in a retrospective cohort of more than 1000 Dutch transgender women and men which did not control for a number of risk factors, including tobacco use. All-cause as well as cardiovascular- and cerebrovascular-specific mortality among transgender men did not differ from the general Dutch population. Among transgender women, all-cause mortality was 51% higher (95% CI 47 to 55) than in the general Dutch population, with the overwhelming majority of the difference due to HIV, drug overdose and suicide; a 64% increased risk (95% CI 43 to 87) in cardiovascular mortality was seen, however no significant difference was seen for cerebrovascular mortality.[9]

Several factors may contribute to an elevation of cardiovascular disease in transgender women, such as higher rates of tobacco use, obesity, diabetes and lipid disorders, and reduced physical activity.[7] Older studies demonstrating increased morbidity and mortality among transgender women included users of high doses (>100mcg/day) of ethinyl estradiol, a known thrombogenic synthetic estrogen used in oral contraceptives at typical doses of only 20-30mcg/day.[10] A meta-analysis of lipids and blood pressure in transgender people using hormone therapy found a mean increase in triglycerides of 23mg/dl (95% CI 5 to 42) among transgender women, and a mean increase in triglycerides of 31mg/dl (95% CI 7 to 55) and systolic blood pressure of 1.7mmHg (95% CI 0.2 to 3.3), and mean decrease in HDL of 6mg/dl (95% CI 0.7 to 11) among transgender men; all other lipid and blood pressure parameters showed no statistically significant change.[11] Such statistically significant changes have small effect sizes and are of questionable clinical significance, especially in the context of primary prevention.

Direct study of the effects of hormones on lipids and blood pressure in transgender people has been limited. A retrospective study of lipids in 169 Austrian transgender people found trends of poorer lipid profiles in both transgender women and men at 5 years however these changes were mild at most, and seemed to be mitigated to some degree by the use of transdermal estradiol.[12] A prospective 6 month study of a young and healthy cohort of 31 transgender women and 17 transgender men in the U.S. found modest overall improvement in lipids in transgender women and only a slight reduction in HDL in transgender men; while statically significant, the effect sizes were small and of questionable clinical significance.[12-14]

Calculating risk

Current American Heart Association - American College of Cardiology guidelines for prevention and lipid management involve the use of sex-specific calculators to determine risk and guide interventions.[14] Determination for the use of aspirin also uses these

calculators when conducting a risk-benefit assessment for gastrointestinal bleeding. Currently there is no guidance on whether to use risk calculators based on natal sex or affirmed gender. It may be reasonable to use natal sex-based calculators in transgender people who have transitioned later in life, given their long-term exposure to the natal hormonal milieu. However with an increasing percentage of transgender people beginning hormone therapy in adolescence and young adulthood, affirmed gender-based calculators may be more appropriate in these cases. Ultimately a primary goal is to calculate a realistic risk-benefit ratio between the benefits of statin therapy or aspirin and the risks of these treatments. **Depending on the age at which hormones are begun and total length of exposure, providers may choose to use the risk calculator for the natal sex, affirmed gender, or an average of the two (Grading: X C M)**. Another goal of calculating risk is to provide adequate information during the informed consent process to allow transgender people of any age, and with or without existing cardiovascular or cerebrovascular disease, to make informed decisions about the long term implications of gender affirming hormones.

Reducing risk

For transgender women with cardiovascular risk factors or established CVD, using the transdermal route of estrogen may be preferred due to lower rates of venous thromboembolism, and lack of associated changes in lipid profile or markers of coagulation (Grading: NT O M).[15,16] Additional modifiable interventions to reduce risk include smoking cessation, weight loss, management of diabetes, and encouraging physical activity. It is theoretically possible that the psychosocial benefits of hormone therapy may have an independent and protective effect through reduction of stress, improved body image resulting in healthier lifestyle choices, reduced tobacco use, and increased physical activity.

References

1. Main C, Knight B, Moxham T, Gabriel Sanchez R, Sanchez Gomez LM, Roqué i Figuls M, et al. Hormone therapy for preventing cardiovascular disease in post-menopausal women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2013;4:CD002229.
2. Boardman HMP, Hartley L, Eisinga A, Main C, Roqué i Figuls M, Bonfill Cosp X, et al. Hormone therapy for preventing cardiovascular disease in post-menopausal women. Cochrane Database Syst Rev. 2015;3:CD002229.
3. Newfield E, Hart S, Dibble S, Kohler L. Female-to-male transgender quality of life. Qual Life Res. 2006 Jun 7;15(9):1447-57.

4. Gómez-Gil E, Zubiaurre-Elorza L, Esteva I, Guillamon A, Godás T, Cruz Almaraz M, et al.Hormone-treated transsexuals report less social distress, anxiety and depression(link is external). Psychoneuroendocrinology. 2011 [cited 2012 Dec 10];
5. Colton Meier SL, Fitzgerald KM, Pardo ST, Babcock J. The effects of hormonal gender affirmation treatment on mental health in female-to-male transsexuals. J Gay Lesbian Ment Health. 2011 Jul;15(3):281-99.
6. Gooren LJ, Wierckx K, Giltay EJ. Cardiovascular disease in transsexual persons treated with cross-sex hormones: reversal of the traditional sex difference in cardiovascular disease pattern. Eur J Endocrinol. 2014 Jun 1;170(6):809-19.
7. Wierckx K, Elaut E, Declercq E, Heylens G, De Cuypere G, Taes Y, et al. Prevalence of cardiovascular disease and cancer during cross-sex hormone therapy in a large cohort of trans persons: a case-control study. Eur J Endocrinol Eur Fed Endocr Soc. 2013 Oct;169(4):471-8.
8. Dhejne C, Oberg K, Arver S, Landén M. An analysis of all applications for sex reassignment surgery in Sweden, 1960-2010: prevalence, incidence, and regrets. Arch Sex Behav. 2014 May 29;
9. Asscheman H, Giltay EJ, Megens JAJ, de Ronde W, van Trotsenburg MAA, Gooren LJG. A long-term follow-up study of mortality in transsexuals receiving treatment with cross-sex hormones. Eur J Endocrinol. 2011 Jan 25;164(4):635-42.
10. van Kesteren PJ, Asscheman H, Megens JA, Gooren LJ. Mortality and morbidity in transsexual subjects treated with cross-sex hormones. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf). 1997 Sep;47(3):337-42.
11. Elamin MB, Garcia MZ, Murad MH, Erwin PJ, Montori VM. Effect of sex steroid use on cardiovascular risk in transsexual individuals: a systematic review and meta-analyses. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf). 2010 Jan;72(1):1-10.
12. Ott J, Aust S, Promberger R, Huber JC, Kaufmann U. Cross-sex hormone therapy alters the serum lipid profile: a retrospective cohort study in 169 transsexuals. J Sex Med. 2011 Aug;8(8):2361-9.
13. Deutsch MB, Bhakri V, Kubicek K. Effects of cross-sex hormone treatment on transgender women and men. Obstet Gynecol. 2015 Mar;125(3):605-10.
14. Stone NJ, Robinson J, Lichtenstein AH, Merz CNB, Blum CB, Eckel RH, et al. 2013 ACC/AHA Guideline on the Treatment of Blood Cholesterol to Reduce Atherosclerotic Cardiovascular Risk in Adults A Report of the American College of

Cardiology/American Heart Association Task Force on Practice Guidelines. Circulation. 2013 Nov 12;01.cir.0000437738.63853.7a.

15. Vehkavaara S, Silveira A, Hakala-Ala-Pietilä T, * AV, Hovatta O, Hamsten A, et al. Effects of oral and transdermal estrogen replacement therapy on markers of coagulation, fibrinolysis, inflammation and serum lipids and lipoproteins in postmenopausal women. Thromb Haemost. 2001;85(4):619-25.

16. Canonico M, Oger E, Plu-Bureau G, Conard J, Meyer G, Levesque H, et al. Hormone therapy and venous thromboembolism among postmenopausal women: impact of the route of estrogen administration and progestogens: the ESTHER study. Circulation. 2007 Feb;115(7):840-5.

Diabetes Mellitus

Recommendations for diabetes screening in transgender patients (regardless of hormone status) do not differ from current national guidelines.

The effect of gender affirming hormone therapy on diabetes risk or disease course is unclear. A Dutch case-control study noted an increased prevalence of type 2 diabetes mellitus among transgender men and women in comparison to both age matched non-transgender male and female groups, however the study did not adjust for other risk factors.[1] A study of the effects of gender affirming hormones on insulin resistance in transgender women and men found that transgender women may experience some increase in markers of insulin resistance, while transgender men exhibited no change.[2] Some data from non-transgender men suggests that testosterone lowers insulin resistance.[3] Data are mixed on the presence of increased rates of polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS) in transgender men prior to hormone therapy. While non-transgender female patients with PCOS require close monitoring for development of diabetes due to marked insulin resistance,[4,5] it is unclear if this risk remains once the hormonal milieu has been modified with the addition of testosterone. While insulin resistance serves as a useful surrogate marker to inform risk, outcome studies using a diagnosis of diabetes as the end point have not been conducted.

Otherwise young and healthy transgender people will often seek medical care with the sole purpose of obtaining hormone therapy or surgery. When this care is provided within the context of comprehensive primary care, identification of risk factors such as obesity, PCOS, metabolic syndrome, impaired fasting glucose, or diabetes may occur earlier than would have happened if the person were not transgender. This can be viewed as an opportunity to improve health particularly in transgender women, who may be at increased cardiovascular risk. However, caution should be used to avoid making gender affirming

care contingent on tight control of these other conditions. Numerous anecdotes exist of poorly controlled diabetic transgender patients who had improvements in self-care and resultant decline in hemoglobin A1c after initiation of gender affirming hormones.

Management of diabetes in transgender patients has not been specifically studied. Testosterone package inserts recommend monitoring as serum glucose may be lowered in patients with diabetes receiving testosterone. It is reasonable to maintain heightened monitoring of indicators such as fasting glucose and hemoglobin A1c when initiating or adjusting hormone therapy. While the WPATH Standards of Care(link is external) recommend that conditions such as diabetes be "reasonably well controlled" prior to initiating hormone therapy, no absolute criteria have been proposed, and the potential adverse effects on blood sugar should be weighed in consideration of the benefits of hormone therapy.

Patients with diabetes seeking gender-affirming surgeries represent a special group for whom aggressive treatment to normalize glucose control is desirable. Genital surgeries and breast/chest surgeries involve microvascular techniques. Healing, avoidance of infection, functionality and cosmesis are thought to be improved with better glycemic control. While the presence of diabetes in itself may not be a contraindication for any of these surgeries, careful coordination between the surgeon and the provider managing the diabetes is recommended.[6]

References

1. Wierckx K, Elaut E, Declercq E, Heylens G, De Cuypere G, Taes Y, et al. Prevalence of cardiovascular disease and cancer during cross-sex hormone therapy in a large cohort of trans persons: a case-control study. Eur J Endocrinol Eur Fed Endocr Soc. 2013 Oct;169(4):471-8
2. Elbers JM., Giltay EJ, Teerlink T, Scheffer PG, Asscheman H, Seidell JC, et al. Effects of sex steroids on components of the insulin resistance syndrome in transsexual subjects. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf). 2003;58(5):562-71.
3. Jones TH. Effects of testosterone on Type 2 diabetes and components of the metabolic syndrome. J Diabetes. 2010 Sep;2(3):146-56.
4. Baba T, Endo T, Ikeda K, Shimizu A, Honnma H, Ikeda H, et al. Distinctive features of female-to-male transsexualism and prevalence of gender identity disorder in Japan. J Sex Med. 2011 Jun;8(6):1686-93.

5. Mueller A, Gooren LJ, Naton-Schötz S, Cupisti S, Beckmann MW, Dittrich R. Prevalence of polycystic ovary syndrome and hyperandrogenemia in female-to-male transsexuals. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2008 Apr;93(4):1408-11.
6. Ellsworth WA, Colon GA. Management of medical morbidities and risk factors before surgery: smoking, diabetes, and other complicating factors. Semin Plast Surg. 2006 Nov;20(4):205-13.

Bone Health and Osteoporosis

Introduction

Adaptation of recommendations for osteoporosis screening to transgender populations is complicated by existing recommendations that vary widely for non-transgender people, including lack of consensus about screening for non-transgender men, and no U.S. national level recommendations on the frequency of screening.

Osteoporosis screening is currently age- and sex- based, and also individualized on the basis of risk factors. There are a number of lifestyle, genetic, endocrinologic, hematologic, rheumatoid and autoimmune diseases, as well as medications that contribute to osteoporosis. Known risk factors for osteoporosis include Caucasian or Asian race, older age, alcohol >10 drinks/week, low body mass index, smoking, chronic corticosteroid use, hypogonadism, rheumatoid arthritis, hyperparathyroidism, immobility, vitamin D deficiency and HIV infection.[1,2]

Osteoporosis risk in transgender women

In one study, researchers found that transgender women had factors which may contribute to an increased risk of osteoporosis, independent of and existing prior to hormone use, such as reduced levels of physical activity, lower muscle mass and grip strength, and lower levels of vitamin D.[3] Studies investigating BMD in transgender women receiving hormones have shown both lower, higher and no change in bone density after initiating hormones.[4-11] The differences in results may be due to the regimens used (some used unopposed androgen blockers for a period of time before initiating hormones) and length of follow-up. Known risk factors for osteoporosis include underutilization of hormones after gonadectomy or use of androgen blockers without or with insufficient estrogen. GnRH analogues also may result in short term decrease in bone mineral density (ie, GnRH analogues without concurrent estrogen, and when estrogen added, or blockers stopped bone density returns to normal).

Osteoporosis risk in transgender men

Most published studies to date have shown either no change, or an increase in bone mineral density in transgender men treated with testosterone. Risk factors for osteoporosis in this population include oophorectomy before age 45 without optimal hormone replacement.[4,6,9-13]

Current screening guidelines in non-transgender populations

There are no consistent guidelines on the optimal frequency of screening in non-transgender people. The WHO guidelines suggest every 10 years. A recent U.S. NIH funded study suggests intervals of approximately 15 years for normal bone density or mild osteopenia, 5 years for moderate osteopenia, and 1 year for advanced osteopenia. Screening intervals in transgender people can be based on these recommendations as well. All professional organizations recommend screening for all non-transgender women over age 65. Some recommend earlier screening in those with risk factors. Some older guidelines recommend screening in non-transgender men after age 70 or in those with risk factors, while others and more recent guidelines make no recommendations for men.

Recommended screening for transgender women and men

There is insufficient evidence to guide recommendations for bone density testing in transgender women or men. **Transgender people (regardless of birth-assigned sex) should begin bone density screening at age 65. Screening between ages 50 and 64 should be considered for those with established risk factors for osteoporosis. Transgender people (regardless of birth assigned sex) who have undergone gonadectomy and have a history of at least 5 years without hormone replacement should also be considered for bone density testing, regardless of age (Grading: X C W)**.

Modality of screening

Dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry (DEXA) of the hip and lumbar spine.

Special considerations

There have been no studies to determine whether clinicians should use the natal sex or affirmed gender for assessment of osteoporosis, e.g., when using the FRAX® tool(link is external). Although some researchers use the natal sex, with the assumption that bone mass has usually peaked for transgender people who initiate hormones in early adulthood, this should be assessed on a case by case basis until there is more data available. This assumption will be further complicated by the increasing prevalence of transgender people who undergo hormonal transition at a pubertal age, or soon after puberty. Sex for comparison within risk assessment tools may be based on the age at which hormones

were initiated, and length of exposure to hormones. In some cases it may be reasonable to assess risk using both the male and female calculators and using an intermediate value.

Weak evidence suggests that agonadal states contribute to an increased risk of osteoporosis, however long term studies are lacking.[14] **Transgender people without gonads, and who are not using hormone replacement, should follow screening and prevention guidelines for agonadal or postmenopausal women, regardless of birth-assigned sex or gender identity (Grading: X C W)**.

Advice should be given to modify risk factors for osteoporosis, including tobacco cessation, Correct low vitamin D levels, maintain calcium intake in line with current guidelines for non-transgender people, weight bearing activity, and moderation of alcohol consumption.

References

1. National Osteoporosis Foundation(link is external). 2013 [cited 2016 Feb 4].
2. Watts NB, Adler RA, Bilezikian JP, Drake MT, Eastell R, Orwoll ES, et al. Osteoporosis in men: an Endocrine Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2012 Jun;97(6):1802-22.
3. Van Caenegem E, Taes Y, Wierckx K, Vandewalle S, Toye K, Kaufman J-M, et al. Low bone mass is prevalent in male-to-female transsexual persons before the start of cross-sex hormonal therapy and gonadectomy. Bone. 2013 May;54(1):92-7.
4. Wierckx K, Mueller S, Weyers S, Van Caenegem E, Roef G, Heylens G, et al. Long-term evaluation of cross-sex hormone treatment in transsexual persons. J Sex Med. 2012 Oct 1;9(10):2641-51.
5. Lapauw B, Taes Y, Simoens S, Van Caenegem E, Weyers S, Goemaere S, et al. Body composition, volumetric and areal bone parameters in male-to-female transsexual persons. Bone. 2008 Dec;43(6):1016-21.
6. Ruetsche AG, Kneubuehl R, Birkhaeuser MH, Lippuner K. Cortical and trabecular bone mineral density in transsexuals after long-term cross-sex hormonal treatment: a cross-sectional study. Osteoporos Int J Establ Result Coop Eur Found Osteoporos Natl Osteoporos Found USA. 2005 Jul;16(7):791-8.
7. Reutrakul S, Ongphiphadhanakul B, Piaseu N, Krittiyawong S, Chanprasertyothin S, Bunnag P, et al. The effects of oestrogen exposure on bone mass in male to female transsexuals. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf). 1998 Dec 1;49(6):811-4.

8. van Kesteren PJ, Asscheman H, Megens JA, Gooren LJ. Mortality and morbidity in transsexual subjects treated with cross-sex hormones. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf). 1997 Sep;47(3):337-42.

9. Meriggiola MC, Armillotta F, Costantino A, Altieri P, Saad F, Kalhorn T, et al. Effects of testosterone undecanoate administered alone or in combination with letrozole or dutasteride in female to male transsexuals. J Sex Med. 2008 Oct 1;5(10):2442-53.

10. Mueller A, Haeberle L, Zollver H, Claassen T, Kronawitter D, Oppelt PG, et al. Effects of intramuscular testosterone undecanoate on body composition and bone mineral density in female-to-male transsexuals. J Sex Med. 2010 Sep 1;7(9):3190-8.

11. Schlatterer K, Auer DP, Yassouridis A, von Werder K, Stalla GK. Transsexualism and osteoporosis. Exp Clin Endocrinol Diabetes Off J Ger Soc Endocrinol Ger Diabetes Assoc. 1998;106(4):365-8.

12. Van Caenegem E, Wierckx K, Taes Y, Dedecker D, Van de Peer F, Toye K, et al. Bone mass, bone geometry, and body composition in female-to-male transsexual persons after long-term cross-sex hormonal therapy. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2012 Jul;97(7):2503-11.

13. Turner A, Chen TC, Barber TW, Malabanan AO, Holick MF, Tangpricha V. Testosterone increases bone mineral density in female-to-male transsexuals: a case series of 15 subjects. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf). 2004 Nov;61(5):560-6.

14. Garcia C, Lyon L, Conell C, Littell RD, Powell CB. Osteoporosis risk and management in BRCA1 and BRCA2 carriers who undergo risk-reducing salpingo-oophorectomy. Gynecol Oncol. 2015 Sep;138(3):723-6.

HIV

Introduction

General guidelines for HIV screening, prevention, and care do not differ for transgender people; however, **HIV services for transgender people should address the specific biological, psychological, and social needs of this population**.[1] HIV prevention and care programs adapted from practices developed for non-transgender men who have sex with men (MSM) or for non-transgender women fail to address the unique structural factors and inequities that increase HIV risk and produce barriers to care among transgender people. For example, many trans women (especially young adults, racial/ethnic minorities and undocumented individuals) experience intersecting discrimination and high rates of trauma, unstable housing, poverty, incarceration, and unemployment, which all negatively impact HIV risk, testing, and continuing care.

Antiretroviral treatment (ART) recommendations for transgender women using feminizing hormones are complicated by lack of data on forms of estrogen commonly used for gender affirming hormone therapy; therefore there is a need to extrapolate data on drug-drug interactions from studies using combination oral contraceptives. Little data exist on HIV among transgender men, likely due to much lower HIV prevalence. However, evidence for HIV risk among transgender men who have sex with men is growing.[2-4]

In line with national guidelines from the U.S. Centers for Disease Control (CDC)(link is external) and the U.S. Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF)(link is external) that recommend universal screening for HIV, all transgender persons should be screened at least once for HIV. After initial screening of all patients, repeat screening is based on HIV risk assessment. **Effective risk assessment requires the ability to obtain an accurate sexual history that includes anatomy-specific sexual behavior**. Transgender women who have a penis should be asked about insertive intercourse as well as receptive intercourse. Transgender women and men who have a vagina should be asked about vaginal as well as anal intercourse, although the risk of HIV acquisition via receptive vaginal sex in a transgender woman who has undergone vaginoplasty is unknown. Risks associated with male genital reconstructions such as phalloplasty or metoidioplasty are unknown. Open-ended questions that do not assume the anatomy and sex or gender of partners are likely to provide the most information.

Prevention

Condoms continue to be a mainstay of HIV prevention. However, using condoms may be difficult for transgender women taking feminizing hormones due to reduced tumescence. Transgender women may also lack the agency to negotiate the use of condoms during sex, especially those who engage in sex work.[5] The role of condoms in transgender men who have undergone phalloplasty is unknown and likely depends on the specific anatomy and surgical approach used. "Female" condoms may be an option for transgender men who engage in receptive vaginal sex.

Newer biomedical HIV prevention interventions increase the options available to reduce HIV risk. There are two categories of medications currently available that are designed to be taken by people who do NOT have HIV for the purposes of preventing HIV acquisition: 1) pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP) and 2) non-occupational post-exposure prophylaxis (nPEP).

Pre-exposure prophylaxis (PrEP)

Daily oral PrEP with the fixed-dose combination of tenofovir disoproxil fumarate (TDF) 300 mg and emtricitabine (FTC) 200 mg has been shown to be safe and effective in reducing the

risk of sexual HIV acquisition in studies with MSM, non-transgender heterosexual adults, and people who inject drugs. CDC has published detailed clinical guidelines for the use of PrEP for individuals at high risk for HIV acquisition.[6]

A sub-analysis of data from a large multi-national randomized controlled trial of PrEP suggests that PrEP is effective in preventing HIV in transgender women when they take the medication as prescribed. However, no efficacy was found among transgender women on "intent-to-treat" analysis.[7] Importantly, all of the transgender women who seroconverted in the PrEP arm of the study had no detectable TDF in their blood, suggesting that they did not take the medication as prescribed. There are no known drug-drug interactions between TDF/FTC and gender affirming hormones, nor are there any known contraindications to concomitant use of PrEP with gender affirming hormone therapy. To effectively engage transgender women, PrEP programs should use trans-inclusive marketing strategies, address community concerns about drug interactions between TDF and gender affirming hormones, and ensure services are delivered by a provider who is knowledgeable about trans health.[8]

Non-occupational post-exposure prophylaxis (nPEP)

The use of nPEP in transgender people should follow guidelines as in non-transgender people. As with PrEP, social marketing and awareness campaigns should be tailored to transgender populations.

Treatment of HIV concurrent with hormone therapy

HIV and its treatment are not contraindications to hormone therapy. In fact, providing hormone therapy in the context of HIV care may improve engagement and retention in care [9] as well as adherence and viral load.[10,11] The World Health Organization [12] as well as the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services [13] recommend antiretroviral therapy for everyone living with HIV, regardless of HIV viral load or CD4 count.[14]

Metabolism of estrogens occurs via the cytochrome P450 enzyme system; therefore there are potential drug-drug interactions with ART agents. Information about these interactions are based on studies in the context of contraception and typically include ethinyl estradiol rather than 17-beta estradiol recommended for feminization. Data are not available on drug interactions between hormones and ARTs in the setting of transgender care. However, **based on available data, most ART can be likely used safely used with estrogen with two exceptions: Amprenavir (Agenerase) and unboosted fosamprenavir (Lexiva) are not recommended for co-administration with estrogens due to a decrease in amprenavir serum concentrations**.[13]

Limited data suggest that non-nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NNRTIs), ritonavir (RTV)-boosted protease inhibitors (PIs), or cobicistat with integrase strand inhibitors (INSTIs) may have an effect on blood levels of some hormonal contraceptive agents. There are no known drug-drug interactions between ethinyl estradiol and nucleoside reverse transcriptase inhibitors (NRTIs), CCR5 antagonists, fusion inhibitors, or non-boosted INSTIs. Interactions vary between an decrease or increase in blood levels of ethinyl estradiol, norethindrone, or norgestimate. Such interactions could potentially result in decreased hormonal efficacy or increase hormonal adverse effects.

Transgender women may prioritize hormone therapy over other care; such symptoms may result in decreased ART adherence if it is perceived that these symptoms are due to ART. Consider monitoring estradiol levels and/or making empiric dosing or regimen adjustments based on development of or changes in estrogenic symptoms when initiating or changing anti-retroviral therapy.

There are limited data on the interactions between ART and masculinizing hormones or other drugs used as anti-androgens for feminization. Currently, there are no documented interactions between ART and either androgens (e.g., testosterone) or anti-androgens (e.g., spironolactone).

Hormone therapy and management of HIV-related opportunistic infections and prophylaxis

Patients with immunosuppression due to HIV may require treatment or prophylaxis for opportunistic infections. Most commonly this involves Trimethoprim - Sulfamethoxazole (TMP-SMX) daily for prevention of PCP pneumonia. A significant interaction leading to hyperkalemia, hospitalizations and deaths has been described in non-transgender patients between spironolactone and TMP-SMX. It is advisable to maintain a high index of suspicion when these drugs are used in combination, with frequent monitoring of serum electrolytes and renal function. Avoiding this combination is especially recommended especially in older patients.[15,16]

References

1. Sevelius JM, Keatley J, Gutierrez-Mock L. HIV/AIDS programming in the United States: considerations affecting transgender women and girls. Womens Health Issues Off Publ Jacobs Inst Womens Health. 2011 Nov;21(6 Suppl):S278-82.
2. Meier SC, Pardo ST, Labuski C, Babcock J. Measures of clinical health among female-to-male transgender persons as a function of sexual orientation. Arch Sex Behav. 2013 Apr;42(3):463-74.

3. Light AD, Obedin-Maliver J, Sevelius JM, Kerns JL. Transgender men who experienced pregnancy after female-to-male gender transitioning. Obstet Gynecol. 2014 Dec;124(6):1120-7.

4. Reisner SL, White Hughto JM, Pardee D, Sevelius J. Syndemics and gender affirmation: HIV sexual risk in female-to-male trans masculine adults reporting sexual contact with cisgender males. Int J STD AIDS. 2015 Sep 18;

5. Poteat T, Wirtz AL, Radix A, Borquez A, Silva-Santisteban A, Deutsch MB, et al. HIV risk and preventive interventions in transgender women sex workers. Lancet. 2015 Jan 17;385(9964):274-86.

6. Preexposure prophylaxis for the prevention of HIV in the United States - 2014: A clinical practice guideline. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, U.S. Public Health Service.

7. Deutsch MB, Glidden DV, Sevelius J, Keatley J, McMahan V, Guanira J, et al. HIV pre-exposure prophylaxis in transgender women: a subgroup analysis of the iPrEx trial.(link is external) Lancet HIV . 2015 Nov [cited 2015 Nov 12];

8. Sevelius JM, Keatley J, Calma N, Arnold E. "I am not a man": Trans-specific barriers and facilitators to PrEP acceptability among transgender women. In Florida; 2015.

9. Sevelius JM, Patouhas E, Keatley JG, Johnson MO. Barriers and facilitators to engagement and retention in care among transgender women living with human immunodeficiency virus. Ann Behav Med Publ Soc Behav Med. 2014 Feb;47(1):5-16.

10. Sevelius JM, Carrico A, Johnson MO. Antiretroviral therapy adherence among transgender women living with HIV. J Assoc Nurses AIDS Care JANAC. 2010 Jun;21(3):256-64.

11. Sevelius JM, Saberi P, Johnson MO. Correlates of antiretroviral adherence and viral load among transgender women living with HIV. AIDS Care. 2014;26(8):976-82.

12. World Health Organization WHO. Consolidated guidelines on HIV prevention, diagnosis, treatment and care for key populations(link is external). WHO.[cited 2016 Jan 29].

13. Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents. Guidelines for the use of antiretroviral agents in HIV-1-infected adults and adolescents(link is external). Department of Health and Human Services. [cited 2016 Jan 29].

14. Panel on Antiretroviral Guidelines for Adults and Adolescents. World Health Organization (WHO) Guidelines: HIV(link is external). WHO. [cited 2014 Dec 3].

15. Antoniou T, Gomes T, Mamdani MM, Yao Z, Hellings C, Garg AX, et al. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole induced hyperkalaemia in elderly patients receiving spironolactone: nested case-control study. BMJ. 2011;343:d5228.

16. Antoniou T, Hollands S, Macdonald EM, Gomes T, Mamdani MM, Juurlink DN, et al. Trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole and risk of sudden death among patients taking spironolactone. CMAJ Can Med Assoc J J Assoc Medicale Can. 2015 Mar 3;187(4):E138-43.

Hepatitis C

Introduction

While there is no evidence that being transgender is an independent risk factor for hepatitis C, some transgender sub-populations may be at increased risk. Rates of HIV and injection drug use are higher among transgender people, and transgender people may inject hormones or soft tissue fillers such as silicone.[1] Sharing or use of contaminated needles, syringes, or vials represents a possible risk factor for infection with blood borne pathogens, including hepatitis C, though the actual prevalence of needle sharing among transgender people is believed to be low.[2,3] Nevertheless, patient education for transgender people using injectable hormones should include advice to use sterile syringes only once without sharing. Providers should screen all transgender people for hepatitis C risk factors and perform an antibody screen in those determined to be at risk, as per current guidelines. All transgender people who inject soft tissue fillers should be screened for hepatitis C.

Chronic HCV and hormone therapy

Chronic Hepatitis C is not a contraindication to hormone therapy. Both estrogen and testosterone undergo hepatic metabolism, and routine monitoring of hepatic function has been recommended. However, neither hormone has been associated with hepatic injury or abnormal liver function tests. Monitoring of liver function in patients with chronic hepatitis C infection should proceed as routinely recommended by disease stage and risk factors for progression dictate. Non-oral forms of hormone therapy avoid first pass through liver metabolism and may be preferred for patients with liver disease, though there is no specific evidence to support this recommendation.[4]

Hepatic dysfunction and malignancies have been noted with oral methyltestosterone. However, methyltestosterone is no longer available in most countries and should no longer be used as part of a gender affirming hormone regimen. Oral testosterone undecanoate gel caps available outside the United States were not associated with hepatic dysfunction in a 10-year safety study among non-transgender males.[5] No published data is available on

clinical outcomes among transgender individuals with chronic viral hepatitis taking hormone therapy.

Chronic HCV treatment and hormone therapy

The American Association for the Study of Liver Diseases recommends treatment for all patients with chronic HCV infection, except those with short life expectancies owing to comorbid conditions.[6] Antiviral medications used for treatment of hepatitis C vary based on HCV genotype, stage of disease, and HCV treatment history; most are metabolized via the same cytochrome P450 pathway as oral estrogens.[7] The table below summarizes currently known drug interactions between estrogens and hepatitis C antivirals.

Table 1. Drug Interactions between Estrogens and HCV Antivirals

Contraceptives & Hormone Replacement	BOC	DCV	LDV/ SOF	OBV/ PTV/ r	OBV/ PTV/ r + DSV	SIM
Legend ✕ = These drugs should not be coadministered ? = Potential interaction - may require close monitoring, alteration of drug dosage or timing of administra ✓ = No clinically significant interaction expected **Abbreviations** BOC = boceprevir DCV = daclatasvir LDV = ledipasvir OBV/PTV/r = ombitasvir/paritaprevir/ritonavir OBV/PTV/r + DSV = ombitasvir/paritaprevir/ritonavir + dasabuvir SIM = simeprevir SOF = sofosbuvir TVR = teleprevir Table drawn from HEP Drug Interactions Checker(link is external), University of Liverpool.						
Desogestrel	?	✓	✓	?	?	✓

Table 1. Drug Interactions between Estrogens and HCV Antivirals

Contraceptives & Hormone Replacement	BOC	DCV	LDV/ SOF	OBV/ PTV/ r	OBV/ PTV/ r + DSV	SIM
Dienogest	?	✓	✓	?	?	✓
Drospirenone	×	✓	✓	✓	✓	?
Estradiol	?	✓	✓	?	?	✓
Ethinyl estradiol	?	✓	✓	×	×	✓
Norethisterone (Norethindrone)	?	✓	✓	?	?	✓

Co-administration of estradiol with boceprevir, ombitasvir/paritaprevir/ritonavir, dasabuvir, or telaprevir could potentially increase estradiol exposure; however, co-administration has not been studied. Co-administration of ethinyl estradiol with boceprevir or telaprevir was found to decrease estrogen levels.[8] Elevated liver enzymes were seen in cisgender women taking ethinyl estradiol with OBV/PTV/r and concomitant use (with or without DSV) is not recommended. In summary, ethinyl estradiol is contraindicated with ombitasvir/paritaprevir/ritonavir. There is no evidence on potential interactions between HCV anti-viral meds and 17-beta estradiol, and providers should consider avoiding OBV/PTV/r with or without DSV in patients using estradiol.[8] Transgender women on estrogen therapy should be closely monitored when starting or stopping HCV treatment.

References

1. Reback CJ, Fletcher JB. HIV prevalence, substance use, and sexual risk behaviors among transgender women recruited through outreach. AIDS Behav. 2014 Jul;18(7):1359-67.

2. Herbst JH, Jacobs ED, Finlayson TJ, McKleroy VS, Neumann MS, Crepaz N, et al. Estimating HIV prevalence and risk behaviors of transgender persons in the United States: a systematic review. AIDS Behav. 2008 Jan;12(1):1-17.
3. Wallace PM, Rasmussen S. Analysis of adulterated silicone: implications for health promotion. Int J Transgenderism. 2010 Oct 12;12(3):167-75.
4. Knezevich EL, Viereck LK, Drincic AT. Medical management of adult transsexual persons. Pharmacotherapy. 2012 Jan;32(1):54-66.
5. Gooren LJ. A ten-year safety study of the oral androgen testosterone undecanoate. J Androl. 1994 Jun;15(3):212-5.
6. AASLD/IDSA HCV Guidance Panel. Hepatitis C guidance: AASLD-IDSA recommendations for testing, managing, and treating adults infected with hepatitis C virus. Hepatol Baltim Md. 2015 Sep;62(3):932-54.
7. Menon RM, Badri PS, Wang T, Polepally AR, Zha J, Khatri A, et al. Drug-drug interaction profile of the all-oral anti-hepatitis C virus regimen of paritaprevir/ritonavir, ombitasvir, and dasabuvir. J Hepatol. 2015 Jul;63(1):20-9.
8. University of Liverpool. HEP Drug Interaction Checker(link is external). HEP Drug Interactions. [cited 2016 May 24].

STIs

Introduction

National guidelines exist on how to take a sexual history and the recommended frequency for sexually transmitted infections (STIs) screening by gender and risk group.[1] The 2015 CDC guidelines 2015 STD Treatment Guidelines(link is external) do include transgender men and women as special populations, and recommend risk assessment based on current anatomy and sexual behaviors, awareness of symptoms consistent with common STIs, and screening for asymptomatic STIs based on behavioral history and sexual practices.[2] However, these guidelines do not include specific screening or interval recommendations. Presented here are specific considerations when screening for STIs in transgender people. Recommendations for management of confirmed STIs does not differ from those for non-transgender people. Screening intervals should be based on risk, with screening every three months in individuals at high risk (multiple partners, condomless sex, transactional sex/sex work, sex while intoxicated).

In practice, transgender people may avoid screening procedures and physical examinations due to fear of discrimination,[3] encountering providers who are

inadequately trained in transgender health,[4] or personal discomfort with the visit or exam.[5] It is important for clinicians to build a trusting and respectful rapport and to clearly explain reasons for asking sexually explicit questions and performing various components of the exam.

Sexual history and risk assessment

Clinicians should assess risk for sexually transmitted infections (STIs) based on the patient's sexual behaviors and current anatomy. Because transgender people differ in hormone use, history of gender affirming surgical procedures, and patterns of sexual behavior, providers should avoid making any assumptions about presence or absence of specific anatomy; sexual orientation; or sexual practices. Anatomy and behavior may change over time; therefore, it will be important to assess for changes that may impact STI risk. To facilitate a respectful rapport, use the patient's internal preferred terminology to refer to anatomic parts.

The Fenway Guide provides suggested sexual risk assessment questions [6] including:

- Are you having sex? How many sex partners have you had in the past year?
- Who are you having sex with? (including anatomy and gender of partners) What types of sex are you having? What parts of your anatomy do you use for sex?
- How do you protect yourself from STIs? (How often do you use condoms/barriers? Any use of PrEP?)
- What STIs have you had in the past, if any? When were you last tested for STIs?
- Has your partner(s) ever been diagnosed with any STIs?
- Do you use alcohol or any drugs when you have sex?
- Do you exchange sex for money, drugs, or a place to stay?

These questions are components of a complete sexual history which would include relationship types, frequency of sexual activity, age of sexual debut, use of drugs or alcohol during sex, sex work history, history of sexual abuse, and sexual function.[7]

Physical exam and STI screening

Serologic screening recommendations for transgender people (HIV, Hepatitis B and C, Syphilis) do not differ in recommendations or technique from those for non-transgender people.

Many transgender people have experienced violence, including sexual violence.[3] Therefore, providers should take a chaperone trauma-informed approach(link is external) to the exam, whenever possible.[8] This approach is grounded in providing a sense of control to the patient and includes: greeting patients while they are dressed; explaining what you plan to do and why; providing information, choices, and decision-making ability.[9] Some transgender patients may prefer to collect their own specimens to allow for greater control over the screening process. Self-collected vaginal and rectal swabs as well as urine specimens have equivalent sensitivity and specificity to provider-collected samples for nucleic acid amplification testing for gonorrhea, chlamydia, and trichomonas.[1] The physical exam should focus on organs that are present and have the potential for infection based on the sexual history.

Transgender women who have undergone vaginoplasty (either penile inversion or colo-vaginoplasty) do not have a cervix, therefore screening for cervical HPV is not appropriate. Some surgical approaches include the use of urethral tissue, which could result in mucosal infectious such as chlamydia or gonorrhea. The risk of infection of intact, inverted penile skin with these organisms is unknown, though lesions such as a syphilitic chancre, herpes or chancroid are possible. When clinically indicated due to symptoms, a physical examination and appropriate testing should be performed. The anatomy of a neovagina created in a transgender woman differs from a natal vagina in that it is a blind cuff, lacks a cervix or surrounding fornices, and may have a more posterior orientation. As such using an anoscope may be a more anatomically appropriate approach for a visual examination. The anoscope can be inserted, the trocar removed, and the vaginal walls visualized collapsing around the end of the anoscope as it is withdrawn. There is no evidence to guide a decision to perform routine pelvic exams on transgender women in order to screen for such conditions as [formerly penile skin] warts or lesions.

Transgender women who have undergone vaginoplasty retain prostate tissue, therefore infectious prostatitis should be included in the differential diagnoses for sexually active trans women with suggestive symptoms. There is no evidence to guide routine screening for Chlamydia in asymptomatic transgender women who have undergone vaginoplasty, though it is reasonable to consider urinary screening in women with risk factors. The role of vaginal gonorrhea and Chlamydia specimens, as opposed to urine testing only, is unknown in women who have undergone penile inversion. Providers may consider vaginal testing however urine testing should be considered essential.

Pelvic inflammatory disease should be in the differential for transgender men with a uterus and fallopian tubes who have vaginal intercourse. Testosterone use is associated with vaginal atrophy; therefore, use of lubricant and a small speculum may be appropriate for

pelvic and speculum exams among transgender men with vaginas. Some transgender men retain patent vaginas after metoidioplasty and may require vaginal screening based on sexual history. Screening for cervical cancer and HPV are covered elsewhere in these guidelines.

References

1. Workowski KA, Bolan GA, Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). Sexually transmitted diseases treatment guidelines, 2015. MMWR Recomm Rep Morb Mortal Wkly Rep Recomm Rep Cent Dis Control. 2015 Jun 5;64(RR-03):1-137.
2. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). 2015 STD Treatment Guidelines(link is external) . [cited 2016 Mar 25].
3. Grant JM, Mottet LA, Tanis J, Harrison J, Herman J, Keisling M. Injustice at every turn: a report of the National Transgender Discrimination Survey(link is external) . National Center for Transgender Equality and National Gay and Lesbian Task Force; 2011 [cited 2016 Mar 17].
4. Lambda Legal. When Health Care Isn't Caring: Lambda Legal's Survey of Discrimination Against LGBT People with HIV(link is external). . New York, NY; 2010 [cited 2016 Mar 25].
5. Bates CK, Carroll N, Potter J. The challenging pelvic examination. J Gen Intern Med. 2011 Jun;26(6):651-7.
6. Gelman M, van Wagenen A, Potter J. Principles for Taking an LGBTQ-Inclusive Health History and Conducting a Culturally Competent Physical Exam. In: Fenway Guide to Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, and Transgender Health. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: American College of Physicians; 2015.
7. Daskalakis DC, Radix A, Mayer G. Sexual Health of LGBTQ People. In: Fenway Guide to Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, and Transgender Health. 2nd ed. Philadelphia: American College of Physicians; 2015.
8. Substance Abuse and Mental Health Services Administration (SAMHSA). Trauma-Informed Approach and Trauma-Specific Interventions(link is external) . 2015 [cited 2016 Mar 25].
9. Raja S, Hasnain M, Hoersch M, Gove-Yin S, Rajagopalan C. Trauma informed care in medicine: current knowledge and future research directions. Fam Community Health. 2015 Sep;38(3):216-26.

Testicular/Scrotal Pain

Introduction

The prevalence of scrotal contents complaints is unknown, though anecdotally are not rare.

A common cause of scrotal contents pain in transgender women is "tucking," which allows a female-appearing genital contour in tight fitting clothing. Tucking involves manually displacing the testes upward into the inguinal canal, and then positioning the penis and scrotal skin between the legs and rearward toward the anus. Tight underwear, tape or a special garment known as a gaff is then used to maintain this positioning. Many transgender women find this practice to be gender affirming, and may maintain this positioning even at night when asleep. Resulting pain may be traumatic, mechanical or neuropathic. Prolonged tucking may also result in urinary reflux and symptoms of prostatism or even infection such as epididymo-orchitis, prostatitis, or cystitis. Prolonged positioning of a compressed urethral meatus in close approximation to the anus may also serve as a portal of infection. Pain related to the onset of hormone therapy is a common complaint however the etiology of this symptom is unknown.

Acute scrotal contents pain requires a workup to rule out conditions requiring emergency treatment. A physical exam to rule out tumors, hernia, hydrocele or other causes of pain is appropriate. Appropriate imaging should be performed when indicated.[1,2]

Treatment approaches

For acute scrotal contents pain investigation for torsion, infection (especially gonorrhea and chlamydia), inguinal hernia, and occult trauma should be performed when appropriate. If no condition requiring emergency treatment is found, treatment with NSAIDs can be effective.[2]

Counseling and education on safer ways of tucking may be the most effective approach to relieving pain believed to be related to this practice. This might include shorter periods of tucking or less tight tucking. Ready access to transgender surgeries when medically necessary, including orchiectomy and vaginoplasty for the treatment of gender dysphoria, may also minimize this condition.

Chronic orchialgia algorithms for non-transgender men often suggest an empirical course of antibiotics (after attempting diagnosing an etiology) and discourage orchiectomy as a last resort measure. This algorithm may not be appropriate for transgender women. Patients often have gender dysphoria and maybe relieved to be offered orchiectomy (as opposed to non-transgender men, who are typically resistant to even unilateral orchiectomy when indicated); orchiectomy may be raised much higher in the treatment algorithm in these cases. When orchiectomy is not indicated, medications used in the

treatment of neuropathic pain may be useful. Pain related to onset of hormone therapy is generally benign, improves spontaneously, and can be treated expectantly and with reassurance.[1,3]

All providers should be aware that physical examination of the genitals may be traumatizing for trans women and must be done with sensitivity and care if necessary. Providers should not discount testicular pain complaints in transgender individuals, and should avoid any perception that transgender women with this complaint are malingering in hope of obtaining an orchiectomy.

References

1. Keoghane SR, Sullivan ME. Investigating and managing chronic scrotal pain. BMJ. 2010;341:c6716.
2. Williams DH. How to manage testicular/groin pain: medical and surgical ladder(link is external). Urology Times. 2014 Jul 24 [cited 2016 Jan 29].
3. Levine L. Chronic orchialgia: evaluation and discussion of treatment options. Ther Adv Urol. 2010 Oct;2(5-06):209-14.

Silicone/Filler

Introduction

Medical grade silicone has origins in aircraft lubricants developed after World War II; U.S. Army staff noticed that drums of Dow 200 silicone lubricant were disappearing from supply rooms, and traced these drums to providers who were injecting the material. By the 1960s, Dow Chemical had introduced a purified medical silicone (Dow 360), intended for use as a syringe lubricant and as a pharmaceutical vehicle. Subsequent off-label use of Dow 360 was associated with a number of poor outcomes, and by the 1970s some laws had been passed banning the use of such injections.[1] By the 1990s, a more viscous silicone material (Silikon-1000) had been approved by the FDA for vitreal injections, with soft tissue injections considered "acceptable off-label use".[1] Medically appropriate use of free silicone injections involves recurrent injections of <0.1cc by a trained practitioner, with the intention of causing a local fibroblastic reaction and collagen growth, ultimately resulting in changes in the subcutaneous contour.[2] Such an approach has been described in the management of HIV-related lipodystrophy.[2]

"Silicone injections" in the context of transgender health actually refer to any one of a number of soft tissue fillers, typically injected by an unlicensed or unscrupulous medical provider. The actual composition of the injected substances is often unknown and may not be of medical grade; contents may include aircraft lubricant, tire sealant, window caulk,

mineral oil, methylacrylates, petroleum jelly, or other substances.[3] In cases of these unsupervised injections, the injected volume (1-3 liters or more) far exceeds what may be performed by a licensed medical provider. Additionally, attention sterility and techniques to avoid embolization may be lacking. Large events ("pumping parties") may take place at which many transgender women receive large volume injections.[4] Estimates of the frequency of injections range from 20% to more than 50% of some populations of transgender women.[5,6] Data from outside the U.S. includes an estimate of 40% of transgender women in Lima, Peru,[3] and 68% of transgender women in several large Thai cities.[7] While most data and anecdotes on soft tissue injections are in transgender women, use among transgender men is also theoretically possible.

Motivations for seeking soft tissue injections

Motivation for receiving the injections may include a strong desire for immediate body changes to relieve gender dysphoria, especially when other modalities of treatment are, unavailable, inaccessible, or perceived as ineffective or slow. The immediate results may encourage community members to recommend the procedures to their peers before any signs of adverse effects appear. A qualitative study of silicone use in transgender women found four contributing factors to this epidemic: poor self-image, misperceptions about silicone, discomfort in public settings (rapid and extensive feminization from silicone helps transgender women blend or "pass"), and low access to health insurance.[8] Other contributing factors include lack of a general awareness of risks in the community, peer pressure, enhanced feminine features to support survival sex work, and the ability to achieve feminization without hormones in order to retain erectile function.[9]

Complications and adverse reactions

Complications may be categorized by time of onset (immediate, early, delayed/late) and by location of effect (local, remote, systemic).[10-12]

Immediate adverse effects of silicone and other substances include silicone embolization, bleeding, pain, and focal erosions and necrosis. Localized skin papules and hypersensitivity reactions are possible. Silicone embolization involving the lungs may result in adult respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS) and death. Some patients have survived multisystem failure due to this condition with severe disability as sequelae including loss of limbs.[11,13-18]

Early adverse effects in the days or weeks following injection include inflammatory nodules with infection due to traditional skin and soft tissue pathogens as well as atypical mycobacteria, and which may be fluctuant. Non-inflammatory nodules may also develop causing pain, itching, and abnormal pigmentation.[18,19] Angioedema is also possible.

Long term adverse effects occurring weeks to years after the injection include migration of silicone with associated pain or deformity. Local or remote inflammatory and non-inflammatory nodules may develop; some may evolve into sterile abscesses or fistulas. Silicone granulomas may develop, with findings of pain, swelling, ulcerations, lymphadenopathy, and possible systemic constitutional symptoms. Biopsy of such lesions shows foreign body granulomas with white vacuoles and surrounding inflammatory cells. Pathogenesis of these lesions may include T cell activation and the presence of biofilms. Other potential complications include secondary lymphedema, telangiectasias and persistent erythema.[18]

Major systemic complications include systemic inflammatory response syndrome (SIRS)/ARDS, sepsis, embolization, hypersensitivity pneumonitis, immune reconstitution inflammatory syndrome (IRIS), or hypercalcemia,[14,18,20] Organ failure is also possible due to direct mass-effects.

Diagnosis

A detailed history can help identify any prior soft tissue injections, or risk factors for use. Patients may be hesitant to disclose prior procedures. Ultrasound, CT or MRI may be helpful adjuncts. Mammography may be ineffective in breasts that have been previously injected. In those patients with a history of extensive injections, soft tissue ultrasound may be a useful tool to guide therapeutic injections for the management of syphilis, gonorrhea, HIV (enfuvirtide), or for vaccines.[21]

Prevention: No research has been conducted on the best practices in preventing the use of medically unsupervised soft tissue fillers. Strategies likely to reduce the prevalence of unlicensed silicone injection include: educating transgender women about risks and alternatives, as well as making available more conventional gender affirming treatment such as hormones and surgery. Community level interventions, utilizing peer health advocates or promotoras may be more effective than provider-originated interventions.

Treatment Approaches: Successful treatment of acute emergencies related to soft tissue injections requires rapid recognition and quick application of intensive care. Delays occur both because of patient hesitation to seek care or report that they received soft tissue injections, and a failure of health care providers to recognize the emergency and to have the knowledge of the necessary treatment.

Management of most complications is supportive and symptom-driven. Minocycline shows promise as a first line antibiotic in the setting of infections due to additional anti-inflammatory properties.[12] Use of surgical excision and reconstruction flaps/grafts may be necessary.[22] Complete mastectomy with breast reconstruction may be necessary for

patients with free silicone spread throughout the breasts.[23,24] Other potential approaches include intralesional corticosteroid injections, topical imiquimod, or etanercept 25mg subcutaneously twice/weekly.[19] Liposuction has been described in the past but is not likely to be of benefit.[25]

References

1. Chasan PE. The history of injectable silicone fluids for soft-tissue augmentation. Plast Reconstr Surg. 2007 Dec;120(7):2034-40.
2. Narins RS, Beer K. Liquid injectable silicone: a review of its history, immunology, technical considerations, complications, and potential. Plast Reconstr Surg. 2006 Sep;118(3 Suppl):77S - 84S.
3. Silva-Santisteban A, Raymond HF, Salazar X, Villayzan J, Leon S, McFarland W, et al. Understanding the HIV/AIDS epidemic in transgender women of Lima, Peru: results from a sero-epidemiologic study using respondent driven sampling. AIDS Behav. 2012;1-10.
4. Wallace PM, Rasmussen S. Analysis of adulterated silicone: implications for health promotion. Int J Transgenderism. 2010 Oct 12;12(3):167-75.
5. Xavier JM, Bobbin M, Singer B, Budd E. A needs assessment of transgendered people of color living in Washington, DC. Int J Transgenderism. 2005;8(2-3):31-47.
6. Nemoto T, Operario D, Keatley J. Health and social services for male-to-female transgender persons of color in San Francisco. Int J Transgenderism. 2005;8(2-3):5-19.
7. Guadamuz TE, Wimonsate W, Varangrat A, Phanuphak P, Jommaroeng R, McNicholl JM, et al. HIV prevalence, risk behavior, hormone use and surgical history among transgender persons in Thailand. AIDS Behav. 2011;15(3):650-8.
8. Wallace PM. Finding self: A qualitative study of transgender, transitioning, and adulterated silicone. Health Educ J. 2010 Sep 21;0017896910384317.
9. Wilson E, Rapues J, Jin H, Raymond HF. The use and correlates of illicit silicone or "fillers" in a population-based sample of transwomen, San Francisco, 2013. J Sex Med. 2014 Jul;11(7):1717-24.
10. Shvartsbeyn M, Rapkiewicz A. Silicon-associated subcutaneous lesion presenting as a mass: a confounding histopathologic correlation. Hum Pathol. 2011 Sep;42(9):1364-7.

11. Clark RF, Cantrell FL, Pacal A, chen W, Betten DP. Subcutaneous silicone injection leading to multi-system organ failure. Clin Toxicol. 2008 Jan;46(9):834-7.

12. Silva MM, Modolin M, Faintuch J, Yamaguchi CM, Zandona CB, Cintra W, et al. Systemic inflammatory reaction after silicone breast implant. Aesthetic Plast Surg. 2011 Mar 18;35(5):789-94.

13. Bartsich S, Wu JK. Silicon emboli syndrome: A sequela of clandestine liquid silicone injections. A case report and review of the literature. J Plast Reconstr Aesthet Surg. 2010 Jan;63(1):e1-3.

14. Hariri LP, Gaissert HA, Brown R, Ciaranello A, Greene RE, Selig MK, et al. Progressive granulomatous pneumonitis in response to cosmetic subcutaneous silicone injections in a patient with HIV-1 infection: case report and review of the literature. Arch Pathol Lab Med. 2012;136(2):204-7.

15. Price EA, Schueler H, Perper JA. Massive systemic silicone embolism: a case report and review of literature. Am J Forensic Med Pathol. 2006 Jun;27(2):97-102.

16. Smith SW, Graber NM, Johnson RC, Barr JR, Hoffman RS, Nelson LS. Multisystem organ failure after large volume injection of castor oil. Ann Plast Surg. 2009 Jan;62(1):12-4.

17. Hage JJ, Kanhai RC, Oen AL, van Diest PJ, Karim RB. The devastating outcome of massive subcutaneous injection of highly viscous fluids in male-to-female transsexuals. Plast Reconstr Surg. 2001 Mar;107(3):734-41.

18. Styperek A, Bayers S, Beer M, Beer K. Nonmedical-grade injections of permanent fillers: medical and medicolegal considerations. J Clin Aesthetic Dermatol. 2013 Apr;6(4):22-9.

19. Paul S, Goyal A, Duncan LM, Smith GP. Granulomatous reaction to liquid injectable silicone for gluteal enhancement: review of management options and success of doxycycline. Dermatol Ther. 2015 Apr;28(2):98-101.

20. Visnyei K, Samuel M, Heacock L, Cortes JA. Hypercalcemia in a male-to-female transgender patient after body contouring injections: a case report. J Med Case Reports. 2014;8:71.

21. Gabrielli E, Ferraioli G, Ferraris L, Riva A, Galli M, Filice C, et al. Enfuvirtide administration in HIV-positive transgender patient with soft tissue augmentation: U.S. evaluation. New Microbiol. 2010 Jul;33(3):263-5.

22. Loustau HD, Mayer HF, Catterino L. Dermolipectomy of the thighs and buttocks to solve a massive silicone oil injection. Aesthetic Plast Surg. 2008 Aug 14;33(4):657-60.

23. Cárdenas-Camarena L. Managing the mammary gland infiltrated with foreign substances: different surgical alternatives. Ann Plast Surg. 2009 Jun;62(6):621-6.

24. Echo A, Otake LR, Mehrara BJ, Kraneburg UM, Agrawal N, Da Lio AL, et al. Surgical management of silicone mastitis: case series and review of the literature. Aesthetic Plast Surg. 2013 Aug;37(4):738-45.

25. Zandi I. Failure to remove soft tissue injected with liquid silicone with use of suction and honesty in scientific medical reports. Plast Reconstr Surg. 2000;105(4):1555.

Fertility Options

Introduction

Transgender people have the same range of reproductive desires as do non-transgender people. Although data are limited, there is no evidence that children of transgender parents are harmed in any unique way.[1] **It is recommended that prior to transition all transgender persons be counseled on the effects of transition on their fertility as well as regarding options for fertility preservation and reproduction (Grading: T O S)**.[2,3]

Exogenous hormones and gonadectomy (removal of testes or ovaries) have clear impacts on fertility. Reproduction in transgender persons who have initiated transition and retain their gonads generally involves discontinuation of exogenous hormones, though ovulation and spermatogenesis may continue in the presence of hormone therapy. If an individual has not undergone gonadectomy, and if an initial evaluation demonstrates an absence of ovulation or spermatogenesis, return of fertility may be possible after discontinuing hormone therapy for a period of time. Anecdotally the time to return of fertility can range from 3-6 months, though some may experience permanent loss of fertility, or require assisted technologies as described below.

Because infertility is not absolute or universal in transgender people undergoing hormone therapy, all transgender people who have gonads and engage in sexual activity that could result in pregnancy should be counseled on the need for contraception. Gender affirming hormone therapy alone is not a reliable form of contraception, and testosterone is a teratogen that is contraindicated in pregnancy. It is unknown how long of a testosterone washout period is appropriate in transgender men prior to pregnancy (Grading: X C S).

Fertility preservation options may include sperm, oocyte, embryo, ovarian tissue or testicular tissue cryopreservation.[4] These are similar to options available to men and women undergoing gonadotoxic cancer therapies or elective fertility preservation for social reasons.

Assisted reproduction may include the full range of fertility services. Whether long-term hormone exposure confers any unique medical risks to the patient undergoing assisted reproduction procedures or any long-term impact on gametes and to future offspring is currently unknown. Transgender patients who undergo fertility preservation or assisted reproduction should be informed of the lack of data on outcomes.

Reproductive options for transgender women

In transgender women, research suggests that prolonged estrogen exposure of the testes has been associated with testicular damage.[2] Restoration of spermatogenesis following extended estrogen treatment, however, has not been well studied.[2] The most successful option for fertility preservation for transgender women is cryopreservation of sperm prior to initiation of hormone therapy. Clomiphene citrate or hCG injections are sometimes used to stimulate spermatogenesis. Several recently reported cases of uterine transplantation into non-transgender women represent a potential future option; however this technology is still in infancy.

Reproductive options for transgender men

The effect of prolonged treatment with exogenous testosterone on ovarian function is unclear. Testosterone therapy usually leads to anovulatory state and amenorrhea. This is usually reversible upon discontinuation of testosterone therapy, and pregnancies have been reported in transmen following prolonged testosterone treatment.

Fertility preservation options for transgender men include oocyte cryopreservation, embryo cryopreservation, and ovarian tissue cryopreservation. The frozen-thawed oocytes or embryos can then be later used for establishing a pregnancy using the patient's uterus or by transfer into a female partner or gestational carrier. While solid data are lacking, transgender men who have initiated transition have been able to discontinue testosterone treatment and undergo insemination of sperm or IVF with embryo transfer to the patient's uterus, a female partner or gestational carrier.

A recently published report surveyed transgender men who experienced pregnancy after initiation of testosterone.[5] Eighty percent resumed menses within 6 months of stopping testosterone. Seven percent used fertility medications. Obstetrical outcomes were similar in the testosterone and non-testosterone users, however it is not clear if participants reporting testosterone use were receiving testosterone at the time of conception and

during pregnancy. The men in the study also expressed a desire for more supportive resources and reported a lack of provider awareness and knowledge regarding fertility in transgender patients. One third of the pregnancies were unplanned, though it is not clear how many of these unplanned pregnancies occurred in the setting of current testosterone use. Nevertheless, such findings highlight the need for contraception in some patients.

Ovarian tissue cryopreservation is currently still considered experimental. There have been several live births reported worldwide resulting after autotransplantation of cryopreserved ovarian tissue.[6,7] However, there have yet to be any live births resulting from in-vitro maturation of oocytes derived from frozen-thawed ovarian tissue fragments. Research to create gametes through stem cell techniques is also ongoing.

All patients should also be informed that these assisted reproductive options are expensive and often not covered by insurance. Mental health counseling and support should be made available for those transgender people pursuing reproductive options who request or require such services.

Fertility preservation for children and adolescents

It is recommended that transgender children and adolescents, and their guardians, also be informed and counseled regarding options for fertility preservation prior to the initiation of pubertal suppression and treatment with gender affirming hormones. In children who have initiated natal puberty, fertility preservation options include sperm, oocyte, and embryo cryopreservation. Currently it is not possible for children who have not undergone natal puberty (and who may have used gender affirming hormones) to preserve gametes.

Prolonged pubertal suppression using gonadotropin releasing hormone (GnRH) analogs is usually reversible and should not impair resumption of puberty upon cessation, though most children who undergo pubertal suppression go on to begin gender affirming hormone therapy without undergoing natal puberty.

Further discussion of pubertal suppression, and the decision to undergo gonadectomy prior to the legal age of majority, is included in the guidelines for transgender children and adolescents.

References

1. Ethics Committee of the American Society for Reproductive Medicine. Access to fertility services by transgender persons: an Ethics Committee opinion. Fertil Steril. 2015 Nov;104(5):1111-5.
2. Hembree WC, Cohen-Kettenis P, Delemarre-van de Waal HA, Gooren LJ, Meyer WJ 3rd, Spack NP, et al. Endocrine treatment of transsexual persons: an Endocrine

Society clinical practice guideline. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2009 Sep;94(9):3132-54.

3. World Professional Association for Transgender Health (WPATH)(link is external) Standards of care for the health of transsexual, transgender, and gender nonconforming people, 7th Version. World Professional Association for Transgender Health (WPATH). WPATH; 2012 [cited 2016 Mar 10]
4. T'Sjoen G, Van Caenegem E, Wierckx K. Transgenderism and reproduction. Curr Opin Endocrinol Diabetes Obes. 2013 Dec;20(6):575-9.
5. Light AD, Obedin-Maliver J, Sevelius JM, Kerns JL. Transgender men who experienced pregnancy after female-to-male gender transitioning. Obstet Gynecol. 2014 Dec;124(6):1120-7.
6. Donnez J, Silber S, Andersen CY, Demeestere I, Piver P, Meirow D, et al. Children born after autotransplantation of cryopreserved ovarian tissue. a review of 13 live births. Ann Med. 2011;43(6):437-50.
7. Dittrich R, Hackl J, Lotz L, Hoffmann I, Beckmann MW. Pregnancies and live births after 20 transplantations of cryopreserved ovarian tissue in a single center. Fertil Steril. 2015 Feb;103(2):462-8.

Breast Cancer – Trans women

Introduction

Adaptation of recommendations for screening in transgender women are complicated by the lack of consensus on breast cancer screening in non-transgender women. Existing recommendations vary widely in each of these critical considerations, and are subject to numerous biases based on the interests of the organization and its constituency.[1-7]

Ideal breast cancer screening recommendations minimize mortality and missed diagnoses, while at the same time avoiding over-screening, with its inherent risks of unnecessary follow-up studies, emotional distress, and potentially invasive biopsies and other procedures. It is noteworthy that the positive predictive value (PPV), defined as the likelihood of a positive screening test representing a true presence of the disease (as opposed to a being a false positive) declines as the prevalence of the disease within a specific population declines.

Breast cancer risk in transgender women

In transgender women, factors that may contribute to a reduced risk of breast cancer include potentially less lifetime overall or cyclical exposure to estrogen and in some cases

the absence of or minimal exposure to progesterone. However, transgender women have a high prevalence of dense breasts, an independent risk for breast cancer and also a predictor of increased rates of false negative mammograms; a Dutch study of 50 transgender women found that 60% had "dense" or "very dense" breasts on mammography.[8]

Existing retrospective data on transgender women have mixed findings. Two retrospective population based studies of breast cancer in transgender women have been reported; both reported only on cases of breast cancer which were detected as part of routine clinical care, as opposed to through a structured and broad screening program. A retrospective study of 2,307 Dutch transgender women treated at a single center found an estimated incidence of 4.1/100,000 person-years, in comparison to the incidence of 155/100,000 person-years in the general Dutch non-transgender female population.[9] A retrospective review of 3,566 transgender women receiving care in the U.S. Veterans Administration Healthcare System found 3 cases total, translating to a non-significant standardized incidence ratio (SIR) of 0.7 (95% CI 0.03 to 5.57) in comparison to non-transgender women, and a significant SIR of 33.3 (95% CI 21.9 to 45.1) in comparison to non-transgender men.[10] It is unclear how many cases of breast cancer went undetected in these two populations, and were then otherwise lost to follow-up or to mortality (known to be high in transgender women) from other causes.[11]

Data on breast cancer in transgender women has been limited to the above studies as well as several case reports, and is overall reassuring with regards to risk being not higher, and possibly lower than in the non-transgender female population.

Age to first consider screening

The only large population based study of mammography before age 50 was conducted in the UK on 160,921 women and found no difference in overall breast cancer mortality.[12] Given the equivocal value of screening before age 50 and the likely lower incidence in transgender women, it is recommended that screening mammography in transgender women not begin before age 50.

Length of exposure to feminizing hormones

Transgender women differ from non-transgender women in the length of exposure to estrogens as well as variable exposure to progestogens. As such it is recommended that screening not commence in transgender women until after a minimum of 5 years of feminizing hormone use, regardless of age. Some providers may choose to discuss the risks and unknowns with patients and delay screening until after up to 10 years of

feminizing hormone use, regardless of age. Note that transgender women over age 50 do not meet screening criteria until they have at least 5-10 years of feminizing hormone use.

Frequency of screening

Existing recommendations in non-transgender women vary with respect to the frequency of screening. As with the age of onset, given the likely lower incidence in transgender women, **it is recommended that screening mammography be performed every 2 years, once the age of 50 and 5-10 years of feminizing hormone use criteria have been met. Providers and patients should engage in discussions that include the risks of overscreening and an assessment of individual risk factors (Grading: T O W)**. Risk score calculators such as the GAIL method may be unreliable when used in transgender women.

Modality of screening

Screening mammography is the primary recommended modality for breast cancer screening in transgender women. Transgender women are often concerned with their breast appearance and development, and may perform frequent unguided self-examinations. Early breast development may be associated with breast pain, tenderness, and nodularity. Transgender women may request breast exams for these symptoms, or may find breast examinations to be gender-affirming. As such providers may consider periodic clinical breast exams, and/or a discussion with patients about general breast awareness and health, however as with non-transgender women,[13] formal clinician or self breast exams for the purpose of breast cancer screening are not recommended in transgender women.

Special considerations

As with non-transgender women, clinicians may choose to reduce the age of onset of screening, number of years of feminizing hormone exposure, or frequency of screening in patients with significant family risk factors. Transgender women with a family history suggestive of (or known) a BRCA mutation should be referred for genetic counseling. No data exists to guide the use of estrogens in transgender women found to have a BRCA mutation. Data on breast cancer risk in non-transgender men with BRCA mutations are limited, with data on BRCA-1 suggesting a lifetime risk of 1.2-5.8%, [14-16] and data on BRCA-2 suggesting a lifetime risk of 6.8%. The risk is much higher for non-transgender women with a BRCA mutation, at 78% lifetime risk. [14, 17] It is unclear if transgender women with the BRCA-1 mutation and using estrogen have a risk above that of non-transgender men, and what role the age at start and total length of exposure to estrogen might play. A single case report of a transgender woman with the BRCA-1 mutation involved the continued use of estrogen under informed consent.[18]

A retrospective cohort study of 1,263 transgender women receiving care at a large urban community health center patients in the United States found that transgender individuals between ages 50 and 74, and with a history of at least 5 years of hormone therapy were significantly less likely than non-transgender individuals to have a mammogram per guidelines (AOR = 0.53; 95% confidence interval = 0.31, 0.91).[19] Further research is needed to understand barriers and other factors which underlie this disparity.

References

1. U.S. Preventive Services Task Force: Final Update Summary Breast Cancer Screening(link is external). [cited 2016 Jan 28].
2. American College of Obstetricians-Gynecologists. Practice bulletin no. 122: Breast cancer screening. Obstet Gynecol. 2011 Aug;118(2 Pt 1):372-82.
3. American Academy of Family Physicians (AAFP): Breast Cancer(link is external). [cited 2016 Jan 28].
4. American Cancer Society Guidelines for the Early Detection of Cancer(link is external). [cited 2016 Jan 28].
5. American College of Radiology: ACR Appropriateness Criteria (Breast Cancer Screening)(link is external). [cited 2016 Jan 28].
6. American Cancer Society recommendations for early breast cancer detection in women without breast symptoms(link is external). [cited 2016 Jan 28].
7. Weyers S, Villeirs G, Vanherreweghe E, Verstraelen H, Monstrey S, Van den Broecke R, et al. Mammography and breast sonography in transsexual women. Eur J Radiol. 2010 Jun;74(3):508-13.
8. Gooren LJ, van Trotsenburg MAA, Giltay EJ, van Diest PJ. Breast cancer development in transsexual subjects receiving cross-sex hormone treatment. J Sex Med. 2013 Dec;10(12):3129-34.
9. 1 Brown GR, Jones KT. Incidence of breast cancer in a cohort of 5,135 transgender veterans. Breast Cancer Res Treat. 2015 Jan;149(1):191-8.
10. Asscheman H, Giltay EJ, Megens JAJ, de Ronde W, van Trotsenburg MAA, Gooren LJG. A long-term follow-up study of mortality in transsexuals receiving treatment with cross-sex hormones. Eur J Endocrinol. 2011 Jan 25;164(4):635-42.
11. Moss SM, Wale C, Smith R, Evans A, Cuckle H, Duffy SW. Effect of mammographic screening from age 40 years on breast cancer mortality in the UK Age trial at 17

years' follow-up: a randomised controlled trial. Lancet Oncol. 2015 Sep;16(9):1123-32.

12. Oeffinger KC, Fontham EH, Etzioni R, et al. Breast cancer screening for women at average risk: 2015 guideline update from the american cancer society. JAMA. 2015 Oct 20;314(15):1599-614.
13. Brose MS, Rebbeck TR, Calzone KA, Stopfer JE, Nathanson KL, Weber BL. Cancer risk estimates for BRCA1 mutation carriers identified in a risk evaluation program. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2002 Sep 18;94(18):1365-72.
14. Tai YC, Domchek S, Parmigiani G, Chen S. Breast cancer risk among male BRCA1 and BRCA2 mutation carriers. J Natl Cancer Inst. 2007 Dec 5;99(23):1811-4.
15. Liede A, Karlan BY, Narod SA. Cancer risks for male carriers of germline mutations in BRCA1 or BRCA2: a review of the literature. J Clin Oncol Off J Am Soc Clin Oncol. 2004 Feb 15;22(4):735-42.
16. Byrd LM, Shenton A, Maher ER, Woodward E, Belk R, Lim C, et al. Better life expectancy in women with BRCA2 compared with BRCA1 mutations is attributable to lower frequency and later onset of ovarian cancer. Cancer Epidemiol Biomark Prev Publ Am Assoc Cancer Res Cosponsored Am Soc Prev Oncol. 2008 Jun;17(6):1535-42.
17. Colebunders B, T'Sjoen G, Weyers S, Monstrey S. Hormonal and surgical treatment in trans-women with BRCA1 mutations: a controversial topic. J Sex Med. 2014 Oct;11(10):2496-9.
18. Bazzi AR, Whorms DS, King DS, Potter J. Adherence to mammography screening guidelines among transgender persons and sexual minority women. Am J Public Health. 2015 Nov;105(11):2356-8.

Prostate/Testicular Cancer

Prostate cancer

Documented cases of prostate cancer in trans women with a variety of hormone use and surgical histories have been reported.[1-3] Most cases of prostate cancer in trans women have been in individuals who started hormones after age 50; such cases may actually represent occult neoplasms, which existed prior to initiation of hormone therapy.[4] In a cohort of 320 transgender women in Belgium who had undergone vaginoplasty, PSAs along with transvaginal ultrasound and digital vaginal examination of the prostate revealed lower PSA and prostate volume than what would be expected in a non-transgender men of

corresponding age.[5] Some anti-androgens, such as 5-alpha reductase inhibitors have also been documented to decrease the PSA result.[6] Removal of gonads in addition to estrogen exposure likely reduces risk for prostate cancer and benign prostatic hypertrophy.[4,5]

Regardless, primary care providers should remain aware of the possibility of prostate cancer in transgender women, even those who have undergone gonadectomy. The decision to perform screening for prostate cancer in transgender women should be made based on guidelines for non-transgender men. If a prostate exam is indicated, both rectal and neovaginal approaches may be considered. Transgender women who have undergone vaginoplasty have a prostate anterior to the vaginal wall, and a digital neovaginal exam examination may be more effective.[5] It should be noted that when PSA testing is performed in transgender women with low testosterone levels, it may be appropriate to reduce the upper limit of normal to 1.0 ng/ml.[4]

Testicular cancer

There has been one case of testicular cancer reported in the literature.[7] It is likely that risk decreases with androgen suppression. Routine testicular cancer screening is not recommended in non-transgender men, and there is no evidence to perform screening in transgender women. Transgender women adherent to therapeutic doses of estrogen plus an androgen blocker, and with persistent testosterone elevations, should be evaluated for testicular tumors by physical exam, as well as human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG), alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) and lactic dehydrogenase (LDH) levels, and possibly a scrotal ultrasound.

References

1. Miksad RA, Bubley G, Church P, Sanda M, Rofsky N, Kaplan I, et al. Prostate cancer in a transgender woman 41 years after initiation of feminization. JAMA. 2006 Nov 15;296(19):2316-7.
2. Turo R, Jallad S, Prescott S, Cross WR. Metastatic prostate cancer in transsexual diagnosed after three decades of estrogen therapy. Can Urol Assoc J J Assoc Urol Can. 2013 Aug;7(7-8):E544-6.
3. Dorff TB, Shazer RL, Nepomuceno EM, Tucker SJ. Successful treatment of metastatic androgen-independent prostate carcinoma in a transsexual patient. Clin Genitourin Cancer. 2007 Jun;5(5):344-6.

4. Trum HW, Hoebeke P, Gooren LJ. Sex reassignment of transsexual people from a gynecologist's and urologist's perspective. Acta Obstet Gynecol Scand. 2015 Jun;94(6):563-7.
5. Weyers S, De Sutter P, Hoebeke S, Monstrey G, 'T Sjoen G, Verstraelen H, et al. Gynaecological aspects of the treatment and follow-up of transsexual men and women. Facts Views Vis ObGyn. 2010;2(1):35-54.
6. Marks LS, Andriole GL, Fitzpatrick JM, Schulman CC, Roehrborn CG. The interpretation of serum prostate specific antigen in men receiving 5alpha-reductase inhibitors: a review and clinical recommendations. J Urol. 2006 Sep;176(3):868-74.
7. Wolf-Gould CS, Wolf-Gould CH. A transgender woman with testicular cancer: a new twist on an old problem. LGBT Health. 2015 Dec 24.

Breast Cancer – Trans Men

Transgender men who have not undergone bilateral mastectomy, or who have only undergone breast reduction, should undergo screening according to current guidelines for non-transgender women. No reliable evidence exists to guide the screening of transgender men who have undergone mastectomy. Since most or nearly all breast tissue may have been removed, mammography for the evaluation of a palpable lesion may not be technically feasible, and alternatives such as ultrasound or MRI may be necessary. The risk of breast cancer in residual breast tissues after mastectomy is unknown. It is important to obtain a clear surgical history, as some patients may have undergone only breast reduction. Some surgeons perform routine preoperative mammography. Some guidelines recommend annual chest wall exams in transgender men after mastectomy; however this is not based on evidence, and is in conflict with the move away from clinician exams in general for non-transgender women. Diagnostic physical exams may be appropriate in the case of new complaints.

Clinicians should engage in dialogue with transgender men who have undergone bilateral mastectomy about the unknown risks associated with residual breast tissue, as well as the possible technical limitations of mammography (Grading: X C S).

Cervical Cancer

Introduction

Transgender men are at risk for cervical cancer. Cervical cancer is the third most common cancer globally [1]; more than 99% of which are caused by infection with one of several high risk oncogenic strains of the human papilloma virus (hr-HPV).[2] Pelvic exams to obtain pap smears may be challenging for transgender patients. Inadequate screening for

cervical cancer is linked to the barriers transgender individuals face in accessing culturally sensitive health care.[3] Transgender men are less likely to be current on cervical cancer screening than non-transgender women.[4] Individuals who have never or have rarely been screened for cervical cancer are at the highest risk for progression of chronic hr-HPV infection to malignancy, morbidity and mortality.[5]

Transgender men who have sex with non-transgender men (trans MSM) report inconsistent condom use during receptive oral, vaginal and anal sex with non-transgender male sexual partners, and are at increased risk for hr-HPV infection and undetected disease progression.[6,7] HPV vaccination between the ages of 9 to 26 has the potential to significantly reduce rates of cervical, oral and anal cancer.[8-10] Adolescent non-transgender males are receptive to HPV vaccination, and 74% of non-transgender men who self-identify as gay or bisexual are willing to get vaccinated for HPV if recommended by their health care provider.[11,12]

Screening recommendations

Cervical cancer screening should never be a requirement for testosterone therapy. Cervical cancer screening for transgender men, including interval of screening and age to begin and end screening follows recommendations for non-transgender women as endorsed by the American Cancer Society, American Society of Colposcopy and Cervical Pathology (ASCCP), American Society of Clinical Pathologists, U.S. Preventive Services Task Force (USPSTF) and the World Health Organization (Grading: X C S).[13-15] As with non-transgender women, transgender men under the age of 21 should not have pap smears regardless of their age of sexual debut.[13] Pap smears on transgender men have a ten-fold higher incidence of an unsatisfactory result compared to non-transgender women, which is positively correlated with length of time on testosterone.[16] If erythema of vaginal and/or cervical tissue is noted, evaluation for usual causes of inflammation is warranted prior to reaching a diagnosis of exclusion of testosterone-mediated atrophic cervicovaginitis. Inflammation may obscure cervical cytological evaluation and result in an unsatisfactory result. In addition, the requisition should indicate any testosterone use as well as the presence of amenorrhea, to allow the pathologist can accurately interpret cell morphology.

Improving patient experiences

Strategies to promote a more supportive and sensitive setting include using culturally sensitive language, interviewing the patient prior to disrobing, and asking the patient to change from the waist down only. A painful pap smear experience is correlated with non-adherence to future screening and colposcopy.[17] Several anecdotal techniques may

reduce pain associated with speculum exams. A pediatric speculum may allow visualization of the cervix and can reduce discomfort with the exam; however it is important to avoid using a speculum so short that it requires excessive external pressure to visualize the cervix. Moving the buttocks past the end of the exam table and encouraging pelvic relaxation may also increase comfort and improve visualization of the cervix. If the examiner notes tension or anxiety, taking time to go through a verbal relaxation exercise can be helpful. Warm water may be used to lubricate a narrow speculum prior to insertion to minimize a patient's discomfort and dysphoria without compromising pap results. Water-based lubricant can reduce discomfort; using a minimal amount of lubricant on the outer portion of a speculum may reduce patient discomfort while minimally increasing the risk of an unsatisfactory sample.[18,19] Excessive lubricant should be avoided; studies have conflicting results on the effect of excessive lubricant on pap results. Some clinicians find inserting a speculum less uncomfortable for patients by first placing a finger or two in the vagina and performing posterior pressure while asking the patient to flex and relax their pelvic floor muscles. A digital (not bimanual) exam may also help identify the location of the cervix and minimize manipulation during the speculum exam. A formal bimanual exam on an otherwise asymptomatic patient may not add clinical value and may add to the patient's discomfort.[20] Other approaches to reduce discomfort might include allowing the patient to insert the speculum themselves or watch the procedure using a mirror, administration of oral benzodiazepines prior to the exam, or the use of vaginal estrogens for 1 week prior to the exam.

Preliminary research on self-collected vaginal samples for HPV compared to clinician obtained samples shows promise, this approach may also be more acceptable to transgender men.[21,22] Future initial HPV screening for transgender men may also utilize non-vaginal sourced specimens; studies supporting concordance of HPV in the urine with HPV in the cervix represent a potential method for a non-vaginal triage algorithm.

References

1. Jemal A, Bray F, Center MM, Ferlay J, Ward E, Forman D. Global cancer statistics. CA Cancer J Clin. 2011 Apr;61(2):69-90.
2. Walboomers JM, Jacobs MV, Manos MM, Bosch FX, Kummer JA, Shah KV, et al. Human papillomavirus is a necessary cause of invasive cervical cancer worldwide. J Pathol. 1999 Sep;189(1):12-9.
3. Rachlin K, Green J, Lombardi E. Utilization of health care among female-to-male transgender individuals in the United States. J Homosex. 2008;54(3):243-58.

4. Peitzmeier SM, Khullar K, Reisner SL, Potter J. Pap test use is lower among female-to-male patients than non-transgender women. Am J Prev Med. 2014 Dec;47(6):808-12.

5. Sung HY, Kearney KA, Miller M, Kinney W, Sawaya GF, Hiatt RA. Papanicolaou smear history and diagnosis of invasive cervical carcinoma among members of a large prepaid health plan. Cancer. 2000 May 15;88(10):2283-9.

6. Sevelius J. "There's no pamphlet for the kind of sex I have": HIV-related risk factors and protective behaviors among transgender men who have sex with nontransgender men. J Assoc Nurses AIDS Care JANAC. 2009 Oct;20(5):398-410.

7. Herbst JH, Jacobs ED, Finlayson TJ, McKleroy VS, Neumann MS, Crepaz N, et al. Estimating HIV prevalence and risk behaviors of transgender persons in the United States: a systematic review. AIDS Behav. 2008 Jan;12(1):1-17.

8. Moscicki A-B. Impact of HPV infection in adolescent populations. J Adolesc Health Off Publ Soc Adolesc Med. 2005 Dec;37(6 Suppl):S3-9.

9. Gillison ML, Chaturvedi AK, Lowy DR. HPV prophylactic vaccines and the potential prevention of noncervical cancers in both men and women. Cancer. 2008 Nov 15;113(10 Suppl):3036-46.

10. Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). FDA licensure of bivalent human papillomavirus vaccine (HPV2, Cervarix) for use in females and updated HPV vaccination recommendations from the Advisory Committee on Immunization Practices (ACIP). MMWR Morb Mortal Wkly Rep. 2010 May 28;59(20):626-9.

11. Reiter PL, McRee A-L, Kadis JA, Brewer NT. HPV vaccine and adolescent males. Vaccine. 2011 Aug 5;29(34):5595-602.

12. Reiter PL, Brewer NT, McRee A-L, Gilbert P, Smith JS. Acceptability of HPV vaccine among a national sample of gay and bisexual men. Sex Transm Dis. 2010 Mar;37(3):197-203.

13. Saslow D, Solomon D, Lawson HW, Killackey M, Kulasingam SL, Cain J, et al. American Cancer Society, American Society for Colposcopy and Cervical Pathology, and American Society for Clinical Pathology screening guidelines for the prevention and early detection of cervical cancer. CA Cancer J Clin. 2012 May;62(3):147-72.

14. Moyer VA, U.S. Preventive Services Task Force. Screening for cervical cancer: U.S. Preventive Services Task Force recommendation statement. Ann Intern Med. 2012 Jun 19;156(12):880-91, W312.

15. World Health Organization. Cervical Cancer Screening in Developing Countries: Report of a WHO Consultation. World Health Organization; 2002. 90 p.
16. Peitzmeier SM, Reisner SL, Harigopal P, Potter J. Female-to-male patients have high prevalence of unsatisfactory Paps compared to non-transgender females: implications for cervical cancer screening. J Gen Intern Med. 2014 May;29(5):778-84.
17. Brooks SE, Gordon NJ, Keller SJ, Thomas SK, Chen TT, Moses G. Association of knowledge, anxiety, and fear with adherence to follow up for colposcopy. J Low Genit Tract Dis. 2002 Jan;6(1):17-22.
18. Hathaway JK, Pathak PK, Maney R. Is liquid-based pap testing affected by water-based lubricant? Obstet Gynecol. 2006 Jan;107(1):66-70.
19. Holton T, Smith D, Terry M, Madgwick A, Levine T. The effect of lubricant contamination on ThinPrep (Cytyc) cervical cytology liquid-based preparations. Cytopathol Off J Br Soc Clin Cytol. 2008 Aug;19(4):236-43.
20. Bates CK, Carroll N, Potter J. The challenging pelvic examination. J Gen Intern Med. 2011 Jun;26(6):651-7.
21. Jacobson DL, Womack SD, Peralta L, Zenilman JM, Feroli K, Maehr J, et al. Concordance of human papillomavirus in the cervix and urine among inner city adolescents. Pediatr Infect Dis J. 2000 Aug;19(8):722-8.
22. Sellors JW, Lorincz AT, Mahony JB, Mielzynska I, Lytwyn A, Roth P, et al. Comparison of self-collected vaginal, vulvar and urine samples with physician-collected cervical samples for human papillomavirus testing to detect high-grade squamous intraepithelial lesions. Can Med Assoc J. 2000;163(5):513-8.

Ovarian and Endometrial Cancer

Endometrial cancer

The administration of exogenous testosterone, which then undergoes aromatization to estrogen, as well as the possible anovulatory state induced by testosterone, may create a hormonal milieu of "unopposed" estrogen. This creates a theoretical risk of endometrial hyperplasia or cancer. Despite this theoretical risk, only one case report of an endometrioid adenocarcinoma exists in the literature.[1] Two studies suggest that the risk of endometrial hyperplasia is low, and that transgender men may commonly have endometrial atrophy when on testosterone: One observational study found endometrial atrophy on histological report in almost half (45%) of trans men on testosterone when

histology was performed post routine hysterectomy.[2] Another case control study performed histopathology on samples comparing trans men on androgens for at least one year to pre and post-menopausal women undergoing hysterectomy or histopathology, and found trans men had endometrial atrophy similar to that found in post-menopausal women.[3]

A number of sources have recommended endometrial surveillance with annual pelvic ultrasounds in transgender men who are amenorrheic, however this recommendation is not evidence based. This recommendation may also be unrealistic since transgender men report avoiding gynecologic care due to lack of cultural competency among providers.[4]

As such, routine screening for endometrial cancer in transgender men using testosterone is not recommended. Unexplained vaginal bleeding (in the absence of missed or changed dosing of testosterone) in a patient previously with testosterone-induced amenorrhea should be explored. (Grading: X C M). Transgender men should be educated on the need to inform their provider in the event of unexplained vaginal bleeding.

Hysterectomy for primary prevention of endometrial cancer is not currently recommended (Grading: X C M); consideration of hysterectomy for the purpose of eliminating the need for cervical cancer screening may be discussed on a case-by-case basis, in recognition of the role of hysterectomy in reducing gender dysphoria, and in consideration of surgical risks and irreversible infertility.

Ovarian cancer

While there have been several case reports of ovarian cancer among transgender men,[5,6] there is no evidence to suggest that trans men on testosterone are at increased risk.

Testosterone causes the ovaries to develop cortical and thecal thickening similar to that seen in the polycystic ovarian syndrome (PCOS), however histologically there are differences in antral follicle counts.[2,7] Several studies have suggested an increased prevalence of PCOS in transgender men prior to testosterone therapy.[8-10] While historically concerns have existed about increased risk of ovarian cancer in transgender men using testosterone, these concerns were based mostly on the inaccurate premise that testosterone causes a PCOS-like ovary. Furthermore, recent data refutes the increased risk of ovarian cancer in non-transgender women with PCOS.[11]

From a primary care perspective, no effective screening algorithm is available for ovarian cancer screening in any individuals without a greater than average risk (i.e., known genetic or personal/family risk factors). Transgender men should receive the same recommended counseling and screenings for anyone with ovaries based on history and presentation. While a unilateral or bilateral oophorectomy may be performed in transgender men as part

of the management of gender dysphoria or for a pathologic process, routine oophorectomy in for primary prevention of ovarian cancer is not recommended. Transgender men who undergo vaginectomy but retain one or both ovaries/gonads, and who require pelvic imaging, may be evaluated by transrectal or transabdominal sonogram.

References

1. Urban RR, Teng NNH, Kapp DS. Gynecologic malignancies in female-to-male transgender patients: the need of original gender surveillance. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2011 May;204(5):e9-12.
2. Grynberg M, Fanchin R, Dubost G, Colau J-C, Brémont-Weil C, Frydman R, et al. Histology of genital tract and breast tissue after long-term testosterone administration in a female-to-male transsexual population. Reprod Biomed Online. 2010 Apr;20(4):553-8.
3. Perrone AM, Cerpolini S, Maria Salfi NC, Ceccarelli C, De Giorgi LB, Formelli G, et al. Effect of long-term testosterone administration on the endometrium of female-to-male (FtM) transsexuals. J Sex Med. 2009 Nov;6(11):3193-200.
4. Reisner SL, Perkovich B, Mimiaga MJ. A mixed methods study of the sexual health needs of New England transmen who have sex with nontransgender men. AIDS Patient Care STDs. 2010 Aug;24(8):501-13.
5. Dizon DS, Tejada-Berges T, Koelliker S, Steinhoff M, Granai CO. Ovarian cancer associated with testosterone supplementation in a female-to-male transsexual patient. Gynecol Obstet Invest. 2006;62(4):226-8.
6. Hage JJ, Dekker JJ, Karim RB, Verheijen RH, Bloemena E. Ovarian cancer in female-to-male transsexuals: report of two cases. Gynecol Oncol. 2000 Mar;76(3):413-5.
7. Gooren LJG, Giltay EJ. Review of studies of androgen treatment of female-to-male transsexuals: effects and risks of administration of androgens to females. J Sex Med. 2008 Apr;5(4):765-76.
8. Balen AH, Schachter ME, Montgomery D, Reid RW, Jacobs HS. Polycystic ovaries are a common finding in untreated female to male transsexuals. Clin Endocrinol (Oxf). 1993 Mar;38(3):325-9.
9. Mueller A, Gooren LJ, Naton-Schötz S, Cupisti S, Beckmann MW, Dittrich R. Prevalence of polycystic ovary syndrome and hyperandrogenemia in female-to-male transsexuals. J Clin Endocrinol Metab. 2008 Apr;93(4):1408-11.

10. Baba T, Endo T, Honnma H, Kitajima Y, Hayashi T, Ikeda H, et al. Association between polycystic ovary syndrome and female-to-male transsexuality. Hum Reprod Oxf Engl. 2007 Apr;22(4):1011-6.

11. Barry JA, Azizia MM, Hardiman PJ. Risk of endometrial, ovarian and breast cancer in women with polycystic ovary syndrome: a systematic review and meta-analysis. Hum Reprod Update. 2014 Oct;20(5):748-58. June 17, 2016 117.

Mental Health

Mental health in the context of primary care

Mental health is vital to positive physical outcomes and, as for all patients, should be addressed for transgender patients in primary care. Due to pathologization and mistreatment by mental health professionals, transgender people are often reluctant to engage with mental health providers.[1,2] Primary care settings may offer a safer environment for transgender people to bring up mental health concerns and may be easier to access than mental health services. Every intake for care should include a mental health history and an assessment for active mental health concerns. Screening should include primary mental health problems, environmental and social stressors, and gender-related needs. Screening also requires provision of appropriate referrals to transgender-affirming mental health services when needs are identified.

Mental health concerns endorsed by a patient should not be automatically assumed to be related their gender identity.[1] Transgender people may be seeking mental health care for a number reasons; in addition to mental health issues relating to or resulting from one's gender identity, transgender people do experience the background rates of mood disorders and other psychiatric conditions seen in the general population. While some may be seeking specific assistance for gender-related themes, others are seeking assistance with depression, anxiety, or other clinical concerns unrelated to their gender identity.[3]

Primary care should be trauma-informed(link is external) in its delivery, with an understanding that many patients present with complex trauma histories with interpersonal, social and medical systems-based trauma experiences.[4] Trauma-informed care and training for all staff and providers can enhance care engagement and health outcomes. In a recent publication, Machtinger and colleagues describe a theoretical framework for providing trauma-informed primary care.[5] The model is based on the needs of women who have a history of trauma. The model proposes the need to address the primary care environment, patient screening, provider response to the patient's needs, and a foundation of organizational values that support trauma informed care across all levels of the organization. Machtinger and colleagues address the need for confidential spaces in

which to conduct a thorough screening of a patient's history with a special emphasis on trauma and a patient's response. Being able to speak with a provider in a place that ensures privacy is critical.

Primary mental health needs of transgender people

Transgender and gender nonconforming people, in general, have three types of need for mental health.

1. **Exploration of gender identity**. This includes determining exactly what one's gender identity is, coming to terms with this gender identity, self-acceptance and individuation, and exploring individual–level ways to actualize this identity in the world. This may also include preparation and assessment for various gender affirming treatments and procedures.
2. **Coming out and social transition**. This includes coming out to family, friends, and coworkers, dating and relationships, and developing tools to cope with being transgender in a sometimes transphobic world.
3. **General mental health issues, possibly unrelated to gender identity**. The variety of mental health concerns experienced by transgender people include mood disorders, generalized anxiety, substance abuse, and post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD).[6]

Transgender people may seek services from mental health providers when they come to realize that their gender identity does not match the sex they were assigned at birth, or when the distress of this incongruence becomes intolerable. The age at which this realization occurs, and the age at which treatment is initially sought, may vary greatly from one person to the next. It should not be assumed that arrival at this realization or seeking treatment late in life indicates that an individual is any "less" transgender.[1]

The coming out process for transgender people can be more challenging than it is for lesbian, gay, and bisexual (LGB) people, primarily because LGB may be able to keep their sexual orientation undisclosed. Due to the nature of social and medical transitions, a transgender person must come out to people with whom they interact unless they relocate and choose to live "in stealth" (i.e. not divulging their transgender identity). The coming out process can be time consuming and emotionally challenging. This process can be gender affirming when transgender people are supported in doing so. Conversely, a lack of support or experiences of being mistreated, harassed, marginalized, defined by surgical status, or repeatedly asked probing personal questions may lead to significant distress.

Approaches to supporting transgender people during the coming out and exploration process include reinforcing self-identification, and exploration of and integration of individualized identity. This in turn will provide a supportive foundation for interacting with unsupporting partners, friends, relatives or coworkers, as well as provide needed tools to diffuse and deflect potential implicit and unconscious transphobic messaging and rejection in everyday life.

Transgender people experience the background rates of common mood disorders, bipolar disorder, schizophrenia etc. that are seen in the general population, as well as a potentially increased rate of some conditions as a result of chronic minority stress and discrimination.[7] Hendricks and Testa have extended Meyer's Minority Stress Model [8] to transgender people.[9] This model addresses the ways that proximal and distal challenges increase the likelihood that a person will experience mental health challenges. Related to this is the work conducted by Nadal addressing microaggressions (e.g., everyday slights).[10] Similar to the concerns for mental health disorders addressed by Hendricks and Testa, Nadal's work also points to the increased risk of mental health concerns for transgender people.

Routine primary care visits should include screening for co-occurring mental health conditions, past treatments, and history of suicide and self-injurious behaviors, symptoms of posttraumatic stress, and substance use. Primary care providers should be equipped to handle basic mental health needs of transgender patients (e.g., depression and anxiety) just as any other patient. Any primary mental health concerns beyond the scope of the provider's routine practice should be referred to transgender-affirming mental health providers. Referrals should be made when appropriate to substance abuse treatment programs, including dual diagnosis programs for those with co-occurring mental illness. All primary care offices should have a clear suicide response plan for any patient endorsing thoughts of suicide. Trans Lifeline(link is external) is a crisis hotline staffed by and for transgender people and can be included in safety planning with patients.[11]

Transgender people seeking care for mental health concerns require culturally competent providers.[1] This includes basic knowledge gender identity. Transgender patients should not be placed in the position of training their providers about their mental or physical health care needs.

Environmental and social considerations

Environmental and social stressors greatly impact mental health. Transgender people are more likely to live in poverty, be discriminated against in employment, and be victims of violence than non-transgender people.[12] Transgender people also face higher rates of

family loss, and homelessness. Transgender people with intersecting identities such as race, ethnicity, or socioeconomic status face increased likelihood of adverse life events. Transgender women of color face extraordinarily high rates of social and health disparities.[13-16] Routine primary care visits should always assess for housing, food, financial, and safety concerns in living and/or work environments. Case management services should be provided within the primary care setting if available. Due to environmental stressors, transgender people may have secondary adjustment difficulties including depression, anxiety, and trauma reactions. Offering referrals for individual and group therapy and support can bolster protective factors in lieu of the extreme hardships many endure.[17,18]

Diagnosis of gender dysphoria

According the *Diagnostic and Statistical Manual for Mental Disorders* (5th ed.) a person may be diagnosed with a mental health disorder ("Gender Dysphoria") if their gender identity does not match the sex they were assigned at birth, and they are suffering clinically significant distress or social/occupational impairment.[6] A diagnosis may provide an explanation for their gender concerns. However, receiving a Gender Dysphoria diagnosis may be perceived as pathologizing.[19] The issue of diagnosis is further complicated by a lack of a diagnostic code for the care of those with a history of gender transition of some kind who no longer experience significant distress or social/occupational impairment. In some cases patients will have a carve-out of mental health services from their medical plan. It is possible that in these cases medical benefits may be denied under the medical plan for transition related care, since the only current ICD10 Gender Dysphoria codes are in the mental health section. A process is in place to create an expanded and more relevant set of codes for ICD11. Insurance plans in some states exclude coverage even if the care has been deemed to be medically necessary.[20] In states that ban health insurance exclusions, or if the individual's insurance includes transgender care, a diagnosis of Gender Dysphoria may be required for insurance to pay for necessary medical and surgical treatment.

Gender identity - specific considerations

Different gender identities and differences of gender expression are not pathologies.[21] However, some transgender people seek mental health services related to their gender. Often, distress is present over the extreme social and environmental difficulties transgender people encounter and they are seeking care to assist with these stressors. Transgender people may also seek mental health services with distress that gender does not match the sex they were assigned at birth or to discuss social and medical avenues available to live as a different gender.

Transgender patients frequently access primary care providers to discuss initiation of cross-sex hormones. **Primary care providers who are experienced in working with transgender patients may feel comfortable initiating hormone therapies without an initial mental health assessment using an informed consent model(Grading: T O S)**.[22] The informed consent process includes addressing the medical and social risks and benefit of hormone treatment. Setting up a separate appointment for this process can be helpful to ensure the patient is given adequate time to review the information and address any questions the patient may have. Informed consent should be reviewed in person to best meet all patients' health literacy needs.

The World Professional Association for Transgender Health (WPATH)(link is external) publishes the Standards of Care (SOC).[23] The SOC outlines a process for the initiation of cross-sex hormones. Per the SOC, an assessment by an experienced clinician - a primary care provider or mental health professional -- is required for initiation of cross-sex hormones. This assessment establishes the presence of persistent gender dysphoria and the ability to give informed consent. Exploration of risks and benefits of treatment to give informed consent should include not only the medical risks and benefits of treatments, but also possible social risks and benefits (such as the risks to employment, relationships, and housing), and ways to navigate and mitigate these risks. Therapy is not required to initiate a medical transition, but is encouraged to address any concerns that might arise during the process.[23] The SOC are intended to be flexible and taken on a case-by-case basis.[23] Removal of the gatekeeper role from mental health providers allows a more open and therapeutic relationship to be formed with mental health providers.

If mental illness impairs a patient's capacity for informed consent, referrals for further mental health assessment and treatment should be made prior to initiation of treatment. SOC recommends stabilizing co-occurring mental illness prior to initiation of hormones, but in some cases the medical treatment of gender dysphoria is best done simultaneously with treatment of mental illness and substance use disorders.[24]

Some patients presenting for initial primary care services may already be on hormones. When a physician has previously prescribed these hormones no new mental health assessment is required for continued hormone treatment. Hormones and standard maintenance of physical and laboratory assessments should be continued after a discussion with the patient about their continued goals of care.

Providers are encouraged to review the tasks of the mental health provider as outlined in the SOC.[23] This document outlines the various activities of mental health providers. This might include assessment, counseling, and medication management. The SOC requires

one or two evaluations by mental health professionals prior to certain surgeries for transgender people, including chest and genital surgeries. The requirements for each surgery and evaluation letter are listed in the SOC, and mental health providers can access further training online in performing these assessments.[25] See Table 1 for an explanation of the required evaluations and related referral letters. Providers are encouraged to be cautious with psychological assessment tools that were not designed for use with transgender people.

The preoperative assessment process has historically been focused on making a diagnosis of gender dysphoria, determining capacity to provide informed consent, and assessing for certain specific criteria (i.e. length of time taking hormone therapy). However, recovery from gender affirming surgeries can be complex and involved processes, and there is an additional need for assessment of overall psychosocial functioning and support, health literacy, capacity for self-care, and social support structure in place. There is also a need to provide basic education about the surgical procedure, and provide support to fill in gaps identified during the assessment process. This need has increased with the advent of expanded access to surgery among a broad range of persons, including those who are medically indigent. A framework has been proposed in which this entire process, including the WPATH assessment, should occur (Fig 1).[26] This framework includes an evaluation of psychosocial functioning, housing status, social support system, transportation, health literacy and access to emergency care in the postop period.

Assessments ("letters") required for gender-affirming medical treatment

Procedures other than those listed below do not require a formal assessment process, though in some cases an assessment and preparation may be indicated, as with any surgery. In some cases, an assessment and letter from a medical provider who has initiated hormone therapy using an informed consent approach may be appropriate.

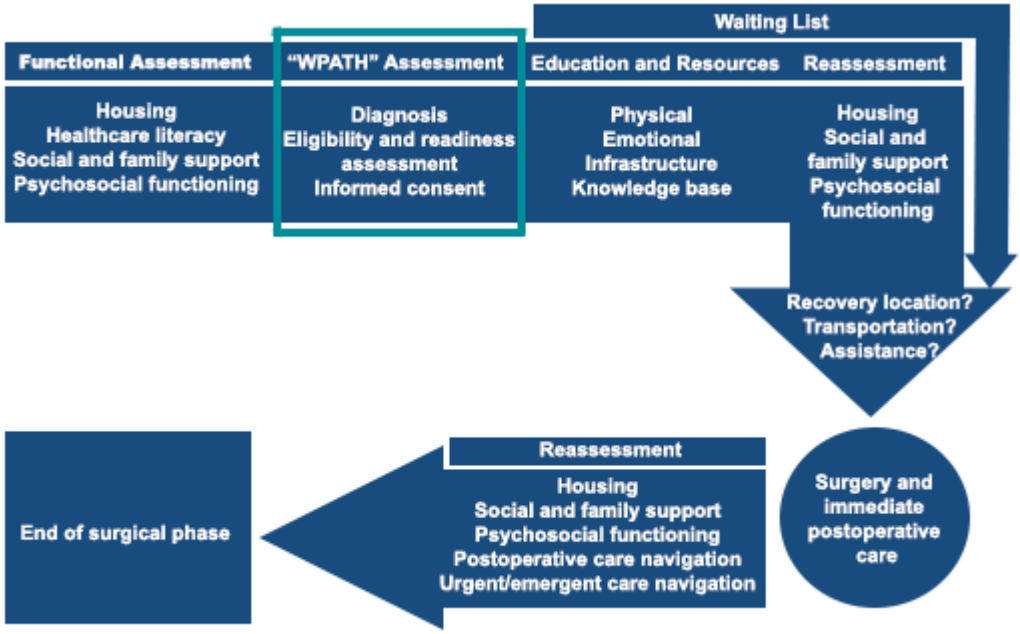
Table 1. Assessments ("Letters") Required for Gender-Affirming Medical Treatment

Type of care	One assessment	Two assessments	Time criteria
Breast augmentation	X		12 months of hormones recom not required

Table 1. Assessments ("Letters") Required for Gender-Affirming Medical Treatment

Type of care	One assessment	Two assessments	Time criteria
Mastectomy ("top" surgery)	X		
Gonadectomy/hysterectomy		X	12 months of hormones unless contraindicated
Vaginoplasty/phalloplasty		X	12 months of hormones unless contraindicated and 12 month gender role congruent with one identity, unless contraindicate

Figure 1. Framework for perioperative assessment, preparation, and care navigation



Credit:

Adapted from: Deutsch MB. Gender-affirming Surgeries in the Era of Insurance Coverage: Developing a Framework for Psychosocial Support and Care Navigation in the Perioperative Period. J Health Care Poor Underserved; May 2016.

This figure illustrates the types of assessments to implement (functional, WPATH, education and resources) before and after gender-affirming surgeries, and the general sequence to be used. First is a functional assessment, which includes housing, health literacy, social and family support, and psychological functioning. Second is the WPATH assessment, which includes diagnosis, eligibility and readiness assessment, and informed consent. At this point, the patient may join a waiting list. An education and resources assessment includes physical, emotional, infrastructure, and knowledgebase and may be done while awaiting a surgery dates. Just prior to surgery, reassess functional readiness, adding topics like recovery location, transportation, and assistance. After surgery and immediate postoperative care, reassess housing and social and family support, psychological functioning, postoperative care navigation, and urgent/emergent care navigation. This concludes the surgical phase.

Counseling can be an important aspect of care for transgender people. For those patients seeking a mental health consultation or psychotherapy prior to the initiation of gender affirming hormone therapy, there is **no minimum** requirement for number of sessions or period of time in therapy.[23] As stated above, providers must use caution about the reason for clinical services and not assume that care is related only to immediate gender dysphoria. It is important to normalize for patients any experiences related to grief and loss. Any transition a person makes in their life may include experiences of loss, regardless of the reason for the loss.

Finally, some mental health providers are trained and licensed to manage psychotropic medications for transgender people. Similar to counseling, this can be an important part of care when a patient has a co-occurring mental health concern for which medication is indicated. In some states psychologists have prescriptions privileges. In most states though, these services will be offered by psychiatrists, primary care physicians, nurse practitioners, or physician assistants.

Harm reduction

Other transgender patients may have obtained hormones by other means, such as the internet or street sources, without initial or ongoing medical assessment or supervision. The SOC has provisions for physicians to continue the medical treatment of patients who have independently initiated cross-sex hormone therapy, regardless of the patient's ability or desire to receive gender-related psychiatric/psychological evaluation.[23] Physicians

may provide treatment based upon the principle of harm reduction. When patients have demonstrated their determination to continue using medication(s) without physician oversight, then it is advisable to assume their medical care and prescribe appropriate hormones. Denial of care will likely result in continued independent treatment and possible harm.

Finding a mental health provider

Making a referral to a provider who is culturally competent can be challenging. This is due, in part, to the lack of training.[27,28] Although this has been changing in recent years, it can still be a challenge. Large cities with LGBT Health Centers and providers known to offer competent care to transgender people have become a reliable source of care. Often there is a network of mental health providers in these cities. For transgender people who live in rural settings or in conservative areas of the country, finding a provider for referral can be more challenging.[16] Some providers will offer tele-mental health services. However, it is important to assure that the provider is licensed in the jurisdiction where the client is receiving services.

Patients should be encouraged to reach out to possible providers and be prepared to ask questions to assure that the provider will be able to meet their needs. Some providers will offer an initial consultation at no cost. This allows an opportunity to determine if the provider will be a good fit. A list of providers by U.S. state(link is external) can be found through the WPATH website. [29]

Collaborative care

Mental health providers are encouraged to create interdisciplinary relationships.[30] Transgender people, especially those who pursue gender affirming treatments and procedures, will require care from a variety of providers. This might include primary care physicians, endocrinologists, and surgeons. Providers are encouraged to seek out the names of providers in their area who are known to provide affirmative care with transgender clients and patients.

Summary

Transgender people deserve to receive mental health services from providers who are culturally competent. Trans-affirmative care assumes that the clients understand their own experience and identity. Providers should approach each individual with cultural humility, and avoid making assumptions or projections based on prior patients, experiences, or preconceptions. Providers are reminded to treat all clients with dignity and respect.

References

1. American Psychological Association. Guidelines for Psychological Practice With Transgender and Gender Nonconforming People. Am Psychol. 2015 Dec;70(9):832-64.
2. Lev AI. Transgender emergence: therapeutic guidelines for working with gender-variant people and their families. New York, NY: Haworth Clinical Practice. New York, NY: Haworth Press; 2004.
3. Carmel T, Hopwood R, dickey lm. Mental health concerns. In: Trans Bodies, Trans Selves: A Resource for the Transgender Community. Oxford University Press; 2014.
4. Richmond KA, Burnes T, Carroll K. Lost in trans-lation: Interpreting systems of trauma for transgender clients. Traumatology. 2012;18(1):45-57.
5. Machtinger EL, Cuca YP, Khanna N, Rose CD, Kimberg LS. From treatment to healing: the promise of trauma-informed primary care. Womens Health Issues Off Publ Jacobs Inst Womens Health. 2015 Jun;25(3):193-7.
6. American Psychiatric Association, American Psychiatric Association, DSM-5 Task Force. Diagnostic and statistical manual of mental disorders: DSM-5. Arlington, Va.: American Psychiatric Association; 2013.
7. Bockting WO, Miner MH, Swinburne Romine RE, Hamilton A, Coleman E. Stigma, mental health, and resilience in an online sample of the U.S. transgender population. Am J Public Health. 2013 May;103(5):943-51.
8. Meyer IH. Prejudice, social stress, and mental health in lesbian, gay, and bisexual populations: conceptual issues and research evidence. Psychol Bull. 2003 Sep;129(5):674-97.
9. Hendricks ML, Testa RJ. A conceptual framework for clinical work with transgender and gender nonconforming clients: an adaptation of the Minority Stress Model. Prof Psychol Res Pract. 2012;43(5):460-7.
10. Nadal KL, Davidoff KC, Davis LS, Wong Y. Emotional, behavioral, and cognitive reactions to microaggressions: Transgender perspectives. Psychol Sex Orientat Gend Divers. 2014;1(1):72-81.
11. Trans Lifeline-(877) 565-8860 Transgender Crisis Hotline(link is external). Trans Lifeline. [cited 2016 Mar 25].
12. Grant JM, Mottet LA, Tanis J, Harrison J, Herman J, Keisling M. Injustice at every turn: a report of the National Transgender Discrimination Survey(link is external) Injustice at every turn: a report of the National Transgender Discrimination Survey. National

Center for Transgender Equality and National Gay and Lesbian Task Force; 2011 [cited 2016 Mar 17].

13. Bauer GR, Hammond R, Travers R, Kaay M, Hohenadel KM, Boyce M. ?I don't think this is theoretical; this is our lives?: how erasure impacts health care for transgender people. J Assoc Nurses AIDS Care JANAC. 2009 Oct;20(5):348-61.
14. Hanssmann C, Morrison D, Russian E, Shiu-Thornton S, Bowen D. A community-based program evaluation of community competency trainings. J Assoc Nurses AIDS Care JANAC. 2010 Jun;21(3):240-55.
15. Shipherd JC, Mizock L, Maguen S, Green KE. Male-to-female transgender veterans and VA health care utilization. Int J Sex Health. 2012;24(1):78-87.
16. Walinsky D, Whitcomb D. Using the ACA Competencies for counseling with transgender clients to increase rural transgender well-being. J LGBT Issues Couns. 2010;4:160-75.
17. Singh A. "Just Getting Out of Bed Is a Revolutionary Act": The Resilience of Transgender People of Color Who Have Survived Traumatic Life Events.(link is external). 2010 May 7 [cited 2016 Mar 24];
18. Singh AA, Hays DG, Watson LS. Strength in the face of adversity: resilience strategies of transgender individuals. J Couns Dev. 2011 Winter;89(1):20-7.
19. Winters K. Gender madness in American Psychiatry: Essays from the struggle for dignity. GID Reform Advocates. 2008;
20. National Center for Transgender Equality. Know your rights: Medicare(link is external) National Center for Transgender Equality. 2015 [cited 2016 Mar 25].
21. World Professional Association for Transgender Health (WPATH). WPATH de-psychopathologisation statement. 2010 May [cited 2016 Mar 25].
22. Deutsch MB. Use of the informed consent model in the provision of cross-sex hormone therapy: a survey of the practices of selected clinics. Int J Transgenderism. 2012 May;13(3):140-6.
23. Coleman E, Bockting W, Botzer M, Cohen-Kettenis P, DeCuypere G, Feldman J, et al. Standards of Care for the Health of Transsexual, Transgender, and Gender-Nonconforming People, Version 7. Int J Transgenderism. 2012;13(4):165-232.

24. Karasic DH. Transgender and gender nonconforming patients. In: Lim RF, editor. Clinical manual of cultural psychiatry (2nd ed). Arlington, VA: American Psychiatric Publishing; 2015. p. 397-410.

25. Karasic DH. Mental health care and assessment of transgender adults(link is external). 2015 [cited 2016 Mar 24].

26. Deutsch MB. Gender-affirming surgeries in the era of insurance coverage: developing a framework for psychosocial support and care navigation in a perioperative period. J Health Care Poor Underserved. 2016;27:1-6.

27. Obedin-Maliver J, Goldsmith ES, Stewart L, White W, Tran E, Brenman S, et al. Lesbian, gay, bisexual, and transgender-related content in undergraduate medical education. JAMA J Am Med Assoc. 2011;306(9):971-7.

28. Pickering DL, Leinbauhg T. Counselor self-efficacy with transgendered clients: Implications for training. [Ohio]: Ohio University; 2005.

29. World Professional Association for Transgender Health (WPATH)(link is external). Find a Provider. 2016 [cited 2016 Mar 25].

30. Ducheny K, Hendricks ML, Keo-Meier C. TGNC-affirmative interdisciplinary care. In: Handbook of trans-affirmative counseling and psychological practice. Washington, DC: American Psychological Association.

Postop Issues – Masculinizing

Introduction

The most common techniques applied to transgender men for masculinizing chest surgery include subcutaneous mastectomy via a periareolar incision and inframammary mastectomy with free nipple grafting. Regardless of approach chosen, the goals of masculinizing chest surgery are to sculpt a natural appearing masculine chest matched to the patient's body habitus with pectoral definition. Unfortunately, there is no consensus approach to surgical planning.[1-5] Surgical technique is dependent not only on the plastic surgeon's individual experience and patient-specific preferences, but also on evaluation of the patient's preoperative body habitus, breast size and shape, and skin quality.

The preoperative chest may be simplified into four components: the breast and subcutaneous tissue, the skin envelope, the nipple and finally the resulting incision.[5] To achieve a masculine chest shape, removal of the breast glandular tissue is required. This is distinctly different in regard to anatomy, goals, and execution from mastectomy performed for breast cancer as well as subcutaneous mastectomy performed for gynecomastia.

Depending on breast tissue volume, preoperative ptosis, and skin elasticity, the skin envelope may require significant reduction for a taut, aesthetic male chest. The nipple-areola complex (NAC) likewise requires resizing, reshaping, and repositioning to match masculine proportions within the constraints of its blood supply. Finally, incisions and skin reduction should create scars with the least conspicuous size, position, and orientation.

With the number of considerations and constraints possible, a myriad of technique refinements and algorithms have been proposed; all can fit into two general categories of techniques. In smaller, less ptotic breasts, a single incision per breast designed around or through the NAC can be used to perform a subcutaneous mastectomy with a crescentic or donut-shaped skin excision. However, this approach is more difficult to apply larger ptotic breasts, as it is difficult to anatomically reposition the nipple and also achieve the necessary skin envelope reduction. In these cases, two incisions are necessary per breast. The glandular tissue and subcutaneous fat is removed and recontoured through a primary inframammary incision, and the nipple is brought through a separate oval incision. If it is not possible to transfer the NAC based on a vascular pedicle, free nipple grafting is also an option.

The procedure itself generally takes 2-4 hours, depending on technique used. Most patients require an overnight or short hospital stay.[1] General anesthetic is used. Surgical drains, left in place until a postoperative clinic visit, are the norm. The authors' preference is to use drains and compressive dressing or garment for the duration of 1-2 weeks.

In general, complications are rare for transgender men undergoing masculinizing chest surgery. Early reoperation is required in 4-9% of patients, usually for hematoma evacuation and infection, with a 12% overall complication rate.[1,2] Postsurgical complications are divided into those presenting early (within 2 weeks postoperatively) and late (after two to four weeks). Limited data specific to transgender masculinizing chest surgery are not as robust as data published for reduction mammoplasty and male gynecomastia surgery, so data on surgical complications are supplemented with data abstracted from the more extensive literature available in these fields.

Postoperative care in the primary and urgent care setting

Most early complications, although rarely life-threatening, should be expeditiously directed to the attention and experience of the operative plastic surgeon. Certain early complications (specifically hematoma, seroma, and nipple complications) can cause lasting aesthetic deformities that would be avoidable with timely intervention.

Delayed complications and specific areas of aesthetic dissatisfaction also merit referral to a surgeon. The most common complaints are related to postoperative scarring, contour

deformities, and nipple appearance or discoloration. The process of healing and remodeling over the course of a year should be reinforced with patients. Prior to consideration for elective revision, patients should be medically, psychologically, and socially stable, and have realistic expectations.

Skin flap and incisional complications and scarring

Masculinizing chest surgery requires resection of redundant skin and soft tissue through surgical elevation of thin skin flaps. As a result, the blood supply to these skin flaps is tenuous.[6] This results in early complications, presenting as some degree of wound separation, delayed wound healing, or skin flap necrosis, with an estimated incidence of about 5 percent in the breast reduction population.[7]

Risk factors for early incisional and skin flap complications include high BMI (>30), hypertension, prior breast incisions, and amount of breast tissue resected. Perhaps the most important factor and one that is also modifiable for non-emergent surgery is preoperative smoking.[7,8] Patients should be counseled to stop completely for 4 weeks prior to surgery, and given the difficult nature of cessation of smoking, should consider quitting before even being referred for this type of surgery.

Unacceptable scarring, as a delayed complication, is also of concern to transgender men. A goal of surgery is to minimize the appearance of scars and optimizing their placement. Delayed wound healing results in a wide, abnormally pigmented scar that is more noticeable than the ideal fine line scar. In general, scarring from surgical incisions can be improved with some basic tenets of postsurgical wound care. Firstly, reduction of mechanical stress and tension across the wound by following postsurgical activity restrictions is paramount to reducing scar width. Tension across the incision can result in minute wound disruptions, causing excessive or widened scar formation. Patients should be counseled that incisions predictably look the worst in the early stage of healing, up to 10 weeks postoperatively, before they begin to remodel over the next several months up to one year. Hyper- or hypopigmentation can also result in a more noticeable scar during this time of remodeling. We therefore recommend sun avoidance, or strong sunblock applied over a healed incision for the first year postoperatively. Scar compression has also been found to reduce hypertrophic scarring, although the mechanism is not known. This can take the form of gentle scar massage (beginning no earlier than 2 weeks postoperatively), taping, or silicone gels and sheets.[9] Surgical scar excision and revision is sometimes necessary if scar care fails to improve the appearance to an acceptable level.

Hematoma / seroma

Hematomas occur in approximately 1-2% of all breast reduction patients postoperatively, and usually present early after surgery.[8] The incidence has been reported as high as 5-11% among certain subgroups of transgender patients.[1-3] Hematomas can be prevented with meticulous surgical hemostasis and optimization of medical comorbidities (coagulopathies, hypertension, and stopping ongoing anticoagulation and certain herbal medications). A hematoma presents as asymmetric swelling and pain, sometimes accompanied by ecchymoses. In general, most hematomas need to be evacuated because of the physical pressure they can exert on the taut skin envelope, which can compromise skin flap viability and can also cause postoperative chest deformities. Other complications can include calcification or infection of the hematoma. Usually upon surgical re-exploration and evacuation, no discrete bleeding vessel is ever identified. Small liquefied hematomas can be aspirated or drained percutaneously.

Seromas and oil cysts are fluid collections that occur at the surgical site that are usually preemptively drained by placement of closed suction drains during the operation, combined with adherence to a postsurgical pressure garment. Occasionally, these collections can persist or recur after surgical drains are removed, and need to be drained to prevent skin flap or incisional compromise. Timing of surgical drain removal is dependent on drain output, and should be a decision made in conjunction with the surgeon.

Large oil cysts result from fat necrosis, which can cause contour irregularities and calcifications over time. These are addressed by aspiration and/or surgical revision.

Infection

Infection is a rare early complication after masculinizing chest surgery.[1,8] Usually this will present as localized cellulitis, and can usually be treated with a short course of oral antibiotics. An underlying fluid collection may need to be drained if it is associated with a persistent postsurgical infection.

Nipple-areola-complex and nipple graft complications

Whether the Nipple-Areola-Complex is preserved on a dermal pedicle, as in subcutaneous mastectomy, or it is taken as a free graft, there are associated early and late complications related to nipple healing. Decreased nipple sensitivity, numbness, or paresthesias are expected outcomes for both methods. Patients report varying degrees of sensory recovery over time with both techniques. Both techniques result in some degree of hypopigmentation, reduction in nipple projection, and the rare complication of nipple loss; with these risks being more pronounced with free grafting. Careful adherence to postoperative instructions and nipple dressings can help assure good results with either technique,[1,2] with described overall nipple loss rates at 1% or less. It is important to

distinguish between full thickness nipple necrosis and expected superficial skin slough in these postoperative patients.[6]

Nipple reconstruction and revision procedures may be required to restore the appearance of the nipple. Nipple position and size can also be adjusted during a secondary procedure. Usually these are minor procedures than can be accommodated once the initial healing phase is complete.

Contour irregularities

Minor chest wall contour deformities or asymmetry, including redundant tissue found at the end of incisions (dog ears), represented the most common reasons for patients seeking secondary chest wall surgery in multiple published series.[3,6] These can be excised as an outpatient procedure. Additionally, other contour deformities or asymmetries can be addressed with liposuction or fat grafting.

Overall operative revision rate for aesthetic improvement was reported as high as 32% in large published series of masculinizing chest surgery.[2]

Breast cancer risk

Transgender men should be counseled that androgenic hormonal therapy and chest wall contouring procedures (including subcutaneous mastectomy) do not obviate the risk of breast cancer development, particularly among those patients who are at greater risk for breast cancer due to family history. Chest wall contouring, with inherently different goals and techniques, as well as abundant intersurgeon variability in regard to technique, should not be considered a risk-reducing procedure. The presence of residual breast tissue has been acknowledged independently by various surgical authors describing various techniques.[1,3,6] Since the approaches to cosmetic mastectomy differs from those used in the management of breast cancer, all patients undergoing chest surgery should have baseline mammography to prevent an unexpected intraoperative or surgical pathology finding. Ongoing screening for breast cancer after subcutaneous mastectomy is discussed elsewhere in these guidelines.

References

1. Wolter A, Diedrichson J, Scholz T, Arens-Landwehr A, Liebau J. Sexual reassignment surgery in female-to-male transsexuals: an algorithm for subcutaneous mastectomy. J Plast Reconstr Aesthetic Surg JPRAS. 2015 Feb;68(2):184-91.
2. Monstrey S, Selvaggi G, Ceulemans P, Van Landuyt K, Bowman C, Blondeel P, et al. Chest-wall contouring surgery in female-to-male transsexuals: a new algorithm. Plast Reconstr Surg. 2008 Mar;121(3):849-59.

3. Berry MG, Curtis R, Davies D. Female-to-male transgender chest reconstruction: a large consecutive, single-surgeon experience. J Plast Reconstr Aesthetic Surg JPRAS. 2012 Jun;65(6):711-9.
4. Cregten-Escobar P, Bouman MB, Buncamper ME, Mullender MG. Subcutaneous mastectomy in female-to-male transsexuals: a retrospective cohort-analysis of 202 patients. J Sex Med. 2012 Dec;9(12):3148-53.
5. Hage JJ, van Kesteren PJ. Chest-wall contouring in female-to-male transsexuals: basic considerations and review of the literature. Plast Reconstr Surg. 1995 Aug;96(2):386-91.
6. Monstrey SJ, Ceulemans P, Hoebeke P. Sex reassignment surgery in the female-to-male transsexual. Semin Plast Surg. 2011 Aug;25(3):229-44.
7. Henry SL, Crawford JL, Puckett CL. Risk factors and complications in reduction mammaplasty: novel associations and preoperative assessment. Plast Reconstr Surg. 2009 Oct;124(4):1040-6.
8. Hall-Findlay EJ, Shestak KC. Breast reduction. Plast Reconstr Surg. 2015 Oct;136(4):531e - 44e.
9. Broughton G, Rohrich R. Wounds and scars. Sel Read Plast Surg. 2005;10(7).

Post Op Issues: Feminizing

Introduction

As with non-transgender women, breast augmentation in transgender women involves implant-based augmentation mammoplasty. A prosthetic implant comprised of a silicone shell, with saline or cohesive silicone filler, is placed underneath the breast tissue (subglandular implant) or under the pectoralis muscle (subpectoral implant).

Initiation of estrogenic and antiandrogenic therapy stimulates the development of breast tissue in transgender women. In the absence of solid evidence for an optimal length of time on feminizing hormone therapy prior to augmentation, some sources recommend a minimum of 6 months of hormone therapy prior to surgery, to allow hormone-related breast development to progress.[1,2] Realistically, a minimum of 2-3 years is more likely to maximize hormonal breast development.

The choice of implant, type, and position is governed by the woman's preoperative body habitus and wishes, in consultation with a board-certified breast or plastic surgeon. Subglandular implant placement may be preferred when there is adequate breast and subcutaneous tissue to cover the implant, and prevent visible implant seams and rippling.

Subpectoral implant placement may be preferred when saline implants are used, or in the absence of adequate soft tissue to disguise the shape of the implant.[3] There are no objective outcomes data to support the use of saline vs. silicone filler, other than aesthetic considerations and preference on the part of the surgeon and patient.[4] Since many transgender women have inadequate breast development, subpectoral silicone implant placement is the typical approach used.

Breast augmentation procedures are often performed as a "same-day," ambulatory procedure under general anesthesia; operative time is approximately 2 hours. Recovery is fairly rapid over the course of several weeks, though some patients may experience prolonged soreness, swelling, and mild bruising. A small incision is made along the new inframammary crease and a space for the implant is created in the subglandular or subpectoral planes described above. The incisions are closed with several layers of sutures and the patient generally feels well enough to go home the same evening.

In general, results are durable and complications are rare for feminizing augmentation mammoplasty.[2] Complications are typically divided into early (less than two to four weeks) or late complications (more than four weeks). Surgical data on augmentation mammoplasty specific to transgender women [2,5] are limited; some data are extrapolated from data published on non-transgender women undergoing this procedure. In one study, 75% of transgender women reported satisfaction in long-term follow-up with implant-based augmentation, with the majority of dissatisfaction related to subjective aesthetic outcome (primarily inadequate breast size) rather than technical surgical complications.[5]

Postoperative complications in the primary and urgent care setting

Any concern for an early postoperative complication (as detailed in sections below) should be expeditiously referred to the operative surgeon.

A plastic surgery referral is also appropriate for a patient presenting late after augmentation mammoplasty with new symptomatic or objective breast complaints related to prior breast augmentation (e.g. swelling, pain, erythema, significant deformity/asymmetry, and implant deflation). Benign and malignant breast tumors are always in the differential diagnosis and should be worked up appropriately. Breast cancer screening should be up-to-date prior to referral. If a fluid collection or implant rupture is suspected based on history or exam, it is helpful to confirm this with an ultrasound or MRI prior to seeing the plastic surgeon.

Women who present with subjective dissatisfaction after previous breast augmentation may require a second surgical consultation or referral to another plastic surgeon. Elective secondary revision of augmented breasts is not uncommon. Prior to any referral for breast surgery, patients should be medically, psychologically, and socially stable, up-to-date in

regard to breast cancer screening if indicated), and have reasonable postsurgical expectations.

Anesthetic complications particular to gender-affirming feminizing mammoplasty

In addition to standard anesthetic complications, patients undergoing feminizing mammoplasty should be assessed for risk factors for venous thromboembolism,and appropriate mechanical and chemoprophylaxis measures applied based on individual risk factors. Management of perioperative estrogen therapy and estrogenic risks of venous thromboembolism are discussed elsewhere in this protocol.

Hematoma

A hematoma typically presents early (within 1-2 weeks) after augmentation mammoplasty, typically as a localized or unilateral swelling accompanied by pain and bruising at the surgical site. In the absence of breast trauma, delayed hematomas are rare.[6]

Close adherence to postoperative care protocols is necessary to prevent early postoperative hematomas. Specifically, the patient should be counseled to avoid strenuous activity and situations where the chest could be exposed to external trauma. Additionally, strict medical adherence (especially in regard to withholding anticoagulant, antiplatelet, and certain herbal medications and compliance with antihypertensive medications) can decrease incidence of postoperative hematoma.

Hematomas are typically treated with surgical re-exploration, evacuation with identification of the bleeding source, and reclosure, with or without exchange of the prosthetic implant. Small hematomas can occasionally be managed expectantly. An untreated large hematoma can result in secondary complications, such as infection, capsular contracture, or implant malposition.[7]

Seroma

A sterile postsurgical fluid collection is expected to form periprosthetically and typically is resorbed after the early recovery period.[6] Unless there is reason to suspect that there is concomitant infection or that the fluid collection is in danger of causing incisional breakdown and implant exposure, there is no reason for concern or need for further radiographic evaluation with an early postoperative fluid collection. There is no evidence in the plastic surgery literature to support the routine use of drains in augmentation mammoplasty. A delayed seroma is generally abnormal, and should be evaluated by a plastic surgeon.[4]

Infection

Infections are uncommon and typically present as early (1-4 weeks) complications following breast augmentation. The severity of infection can range from a mild incisional cellulitis to a purulent periprosthetic infection. The most common pathogens in periprosthetic infections are skin flora, and as a result, surgeons go to extensive lengths to avoid contamination.[8]

A majority of postoperative infections will respond to medical treatment with antibiotics. However, most authors would advocate for implant removal in cases that fail to resolve, with delayed secondary augmentation performed in 6-12 months, once the patient has time to heal and fully clear the infection.[3]

Incisional complications

Incisional scarring is a late complication of augmentation mammoplasty. Patients should be cautioned on appropriate scar care, including sun avoidance in the early postoperative period. Patients with darker or oily skin types or a prior history of hypertrophic scar or keloid formation should also be aware of their increased risk for these complications.

In general, scarring from surgical incisions can be improved by following some basic tenets of postsurgical wound care. Firstly, reduction of mechanical stress and tension across the wound by following postsurgical activity restrictions is paramount to reducing scar width. Tension across the incision can result in minute wound disruptions, causing excessive or widened scar formation. Patients should be counseled that incisions predictably look the worst in the early stage of healing, up to 10 weeks postoperatively, before they begin to remodel over the next several months to up to one year. Hyper- or Hypopigmentation can also result in a more noticeable scar during this time of remodeling. We therefore recommend sun avoidance, or strong sunblock applied over a healed incision for the first year postoperatively. Scar compression has also been found to reduce hypertrophic scarring, although the mechanism is not known. This can take the form of gentle scar massage (beginning no earlier than 2 weeks postoperatively and after the wound is fully healed), taping, or silicone gels and sheets.[9]

Implant rupture

A break in the silastic shell of a saline [10] implant will be recognized immediately as deflation and loss of breast volume. Implants placed prior to the late 2000s contained a liquid silicone gel which was prone to leakage, both due to shell rupture and leaching. Potential complications include deformity, inflammation, and pain. Currently available silicone breast implants (4th or 5th generation implants, also termed cohesive gel implants), even a break in the outer shell of the implant will not allow free silicone gel to escape the implant. As a result, silicone implant rupture often goes undetected.

Suspected rupture can be confirmed by MRI imaging. A long-term MRI study of implant integrity found that more than 90% of the current generation of silicone implants were intact at 10 years.[11]

A 2011 report by the FDA recommended routine MRI screening for asymptomatic silicone implant rupture, initially three years after implantation and biannually thereafter,[12] although there is no evidence base to support such a recommendation and an MRI may not be covered by insurance.[13] Patients should receive preoperative counseling regarding this recommendation, as well the lack of objective evidence to support it.

Implant malposition and capsular contracture

Implant malposition can occur over time as the breast adapts to breast implant placement and aging. Nonpathologic capsule formation over the surface of the implant is expected. Pathologic fibrotic capsule formation, known as capsular contracture, can cause the implant to be hard and palpable, or cause implant displacement, breast deformation, or even breast pain related to the implant. Once symptomatic or disfiguring, implant removal and surgical excision of the capsule is indicated. Capsular contracture rates in modern implants are felt to be less than 10%, although long-term followup is needed.[3] There has not been any link between breast implants or periprosthetic capsule formation and connective tissue diseases.[3] While the U.S. Food and Drug Administration recommends screening for silicone implant rupture with MRI every 3 years, there is no evidence to support this practice in the absence of symptoms (pain, deformity), since the recommended approach to an incidental and asymptomatic implant rupture is non-operative observation.

Inadequate size and aesthetic deformities

A long-term study of transgender women who underwent augmentation mammoplasty found that 16% of the patients underwent a second augmentation procedure for breasts that were too small.[5] These patients accounted for the majority of dissatisfaction related to augmentation.

A number of aesthetically unappealing complications can occur and result in dissatisfaction requiring revisional surgery and secondary augmentation. These complications are generally a result of a combination of technique and patient anatomy. Some of these complications can include a visible implant and implant folding or rippling, which occurs in saline implants or when the patient has inadequate soft tissue covering the implant. Other patients can develop asymmetry related to scar formation or displacement over time by the action of the pectoralis muscle (in the case of submuscular

implants). These deformities will need to be addressed with secondary revision breast augmentation procedures.

Breast masses

Breast cancer epidemiology and screening in transgender women is covered elsewhere in this protocol. For those transgender women requiring screening or diagnostic mammography or breast ultrasound, both are possible with breast implants. However, mammography cannot detect implant-related complications, such as ruptures.[14]

Breast soft tissue injections

Although autologous fat grafting is gaining acceptance in plastic surgery,[15] its use in transgender women has not been widespread or well-described. Injection of silicone and other non-medical substances by unlicensed providers is covered in detail elsewhere in this protocol.

References

1. World Professional Association for Transgender Health (WPATH)(link is external). Standards of care for the health of transsexual, transgender, and gender nonconforming people. 7th Version. WPATH; 2012 [cited 2016 Mar 10].
2. Kanhai RC, Hage JJ, Asscheman H, Mulder JW. Augmentation mammaplasty in male-to-female transsexuals. Plast Reconstr Surg. 1999 Aug;104(2):542-9; discussion 550-1.
3. Thorne CH. An evidence-based approach to augmentation mammaplasty. Plast Reconstr Surg. 2010 Dec;126(6):2184-8.
4. Lista F, Ahmad J. Evidence-based medicine: augmentation mammaplasty. Plast Reconstr Surg. 2013 Dec;132(6):1684-96.
5. Kanhai RC, Hage JJ, Mulder JW. Long-term outcome of augmentation mammaplasty in male-to-female transsexuals: a questionnaire survey of 107 patients. Br J Plast Surg. 2000 Apr;53(3):209-11.
6. Thorne CH. Breast Augmentation. In: Grabb and Smith's plastic surgery. Lippincott Williams & Wilkins; 2013.
7. Williams C, Aston S, Rees TD. The effect of hematoma on the thickness of pseudosheaths around silicone implants. Plast Reconstr Surg. 1975 Aug;56(2):194-8.

8. Brand KG. Infection of mammary prostheses: a survey and the question of prevention. Ann Plast Surg. 1993 Apr;30(4):289-95.
9. Broughton G, Rohrich R. Wounds and scars. Sel Read Plast Surg. 2005;10(7).
10. Walker PS, Walls B, Murphy DK. Natrelle saline-filled breast implants: a prospective 10-year study. Aesthetic Surg J Am Soc Aesthetic Plast Surg. 2009 Feb;29(1):19-25.
11. Cunningham B. The Mentor Core Study on Silicone MemoryGel Breast Implants. Plast Reconstr Surg. 2007 Dec;120(7 Suppl 1):19S - 29S; discussion 30S - 32S.
12. U.S. Food and Drug Administration, Center for Devices and Radiological Health. FDA Update on the Safety of Silicone Gel-Filled Breast Implants. 2011 Jun.
13. McCarthy CM, Pusic AL, Kerrigan CL. Silicone breast implants and magnetic resonance imaging screening for rupture: do U.S. Food and Drug Administration recommendations reflect an evidence-based practice approach to patient care? Plast Reconstr Surg. 2008 Apr;121(4):1127-34.
14. Weyers S, Villeirs G, Vanherreweghe E, Verstraelen H, Monstrey S, Van den Broecke R, et al. Mammography and breast sonography in transsexual women. Eur J Radiol. 2010 Jun;74(3):508-13.
15. Eaves FF, Haeck PC, Rohrich RJ. ASAPS/ASPS Position statement on stem cells and fat grafting. Plast Reconstr Surg. 2012 Jan;129(1):285-7.

Vaginoplasty

Introduction

The most common vaginoplasty technique is some variation of the penile inversion procedure. In this technique, a vaginal vault is created between the rectum and the urethra, in the same location as a non-transgender female between the pelvic floor (Kegel) muscles, and the vaginal lining is created from penile skin. An orchiectomy is performed, the labia majora are created using scrotal skin, and the clitoris is created from a portion of the glans penis. The prostate is left in place to avoid complications such as incontinence and urethral strictures. Furthermore, the prostate has erogenous sensation and is the anatomic equivalent to the "g-spot." Great care is taken to limit the external scars from a vaginoplasty by locating the incisions appropriately and with meticulous closure. Typical depth is 15 cm (6 inches), with a range of 12-16cm (5-6.5 inches); in comparison, typical vaginal depth in non-transgender females is between 9-12cm (3.5 to 5 inches). In the case of prior circumcision a skin graft, typically scrotal in origin, may be required. If there is insufficient skin between the penis and the scrotum to achieve 12cm (5 inches) of depth, a skin graft

from the hip, lower abdomen or inner thigh may be used. Resultant scarring at the donor site may be minimized or hidden using standard techniques. Because the penile inversion approach does not create a vaginal mucosa, the vagina does not self-lubricate and requires the use of an external lubricant for dilation or penetrative sex.

Scrotal skin has abundant hair follicles and it is possible to transfer skin with sparse hair growth into the vagina unless hair is removed in advance. Some surgeons rely on treating all the visible hair with aggressive thinning of the skin and cauterization of visible hair follicles at the time of surgery. However, since hair grows in stages this approach might not adequately address dormant follicles. The most reliable method of preventing hair growth in the vagina is to perform scrotal electrolysis, at least three full clearings 8-12 weeks apart, depending on electrologist preference and hair type and distribution. Surgeons should provide a diagram of the specific area for clearance.

A common outcome of penile inversion vaginoplasty performed in a single stage (a "one-stage" vaginoplasty), with penile skin positioned between scrotal skin, is labia majora that are spaced too far apart. There may also be minimal if any clitoral hooding (except in heavier patients) and the labia minora may be insufficient after one operation. Although there are different variations of the one-step procedure, it has been the author's experience that these previously mentioned deficiencies are common. This constraint is due to factors inherent to the penile inversion approach and the limitations of the blood supply. From the standing position and with the legs together, most results appear acceptable; however, upon direct examination or intimate view, the deficiencies discussed above will be apparent. In order to adequately address these deficiencies, the author believes that a second operation is required. A secondary labiaplasty provides an opportunity to bring the labia majora closer to the midline in a more anatomically correct location, provide adequate clitoral hooding, and define the labia minora. In addition, there are many variables that can affect healing and the final result. Specifically, this secondary procedure also allows the surgeon to deal with differences in healing, such as revision of the urethra, correction of any vaginal webbing or persistent asymmetries, or revise scars that are unsatisfactory. These revisions will improve functionality and the final outcome for the patient and might not otherwise be addressed.

Immediate postoperative considerations

Gauze packing or a stenting device is placed in the vagina intraoperatively and remains in place for 5-7 days. Once removed, the patient is instructed in vaginal dilation, with dilators generally provided by the surgeon; dilation schedules vary between surgeons. Table 1 shows sample postoperative instructions, and Table 2 shows dilation instructions and a sample dilation schedule.

Table 1. Vaginoplasty Postoperative Instructions

Focus area	Instructions
Source: Brownstein & Crane Surgical Services	
Activity	Avoid strenuous activity for 6 weeks. Avoid swimming or bike riding for 3 m
Sitting	For the first month post-op, sitting may be uncomfortable, but not unsafe Recommendation to use donut ring to relieve pressure at surgical site.
Bathing	Resume showering following first postoperative visit, patting incisional ar take baths or submerge in water for 8 weeks post-op.
Swelling	Labial swelling is normal and will gradually resolve 6-8 weeks postoperati may be aggravated with long-term sitting or standing. For the first week po ice on the perineum for 20 minutes every hour can assist in relieving some
Sexual intercourse	You may resume sexual intercourse 3 months after surgery, unless you ha instructed otherwise.
Hygiene	Wash hands before and after any contact with the genital area. Shower or When washing, wipe from front to back to avoid contamination by bacteri region. Avoid tight clothing; friction may facilitate bacteria transfer.
Vaginal discharge	Vaginal discharge that is brownish yellow should be expected in the first 4 postoperatively. Bleeding and spotting should be expected in the first 8 w postoperatively. Soap and water douche should help reduce this. Chamo liquid soap can help cleanse the neo vagina as well.

Table 1. Vaginoplasty Postoperative Instructions

Focus area	Instructions
Tobacco/smoking	Avoid tobacco use or smoking 1 month postoperatively, as this can interfe healing process.
Diet/nausea/constipation	Begin with a liquid diet and increase to your usual diet as tolerated. Anti-n medication may be prescribed. Narcotic pain medication may cause cons stool softener such as Colace can help prevent constipation.
Pain medication	Postoperative pain is normal, and pain medication may be prescribed. Pa to be taken as prescribed, and can be switched for Extra Strength Tylenol
Dilation	Dilation is an important part of recovery. Dilators may be provided to patie instructions regarding dilation in the post-op period.

Dilation Instructions

Source: Brownstein & Crane Surgical Services

Please be aware that each person's dilation schedule may vary.

- Prior to insertion into the vagina, ensure the dilator is clean.
- Clean the dilator with warm water and antibacterial soap. Rinse well and dry with a clean paper towel or cloth.
- Apply Surgilube or KY Jelly to the dilator prior to insertion. Only use water based lubrication.
- Avoid silicone-based lubricants.
- Gently insert dilator into the vagina at an angle of 45 degrees until under the pubic bone, and then continue inserting straight inward.

- Expect to feel a small amount of resistance and tenderness. Stop immediately if there is too much resistance or severe pain.
- Insert the dilator into the full depth of the vagina (until you feel moderate pressure or resistance) and leave in place for 10 minutes. You should be inserting until only one or two white dots remain outside of the vagina.
- Start dilating three times daily for three months on the day the vaginal packing is removed.
- You may start using the next size dilator after three months of dilating. You should use the next size for three months.
- Dilation frequency: 0-3 months after surgery 3 times/day for 10 minutes each time, 3-6 months after surgery 1/day for 10 minutes each time, more than 6 months after surgery 2-3/week for 10 minutes each time, more than 9 months 1-2x/week.
- If the vagina begins to feel tight, increase the frequency of the dilation schedule.
- You should use soap and water to cleanse the vaginal canal after each dilation.

Table 2. Vaginoplasty Postoperative Instructions

Months Since Surgery	Color of Dilator	Diameter of Dilator	Frequ
Source: Brownstein & Crane Surgical Services			
0-3	VIOLET	1-1/8"	3X pe
3-6	BLUE	1-1/4"	Once
6-9	GREEN	1-3/8"	Every
9-12	ORANGE	1-1/2"	1-2x p

Immediate risks include bleeding, infection, skin or clitoral necrosis, suture line dehiscence, urinary retention or vaginal prolapse. Fistulas from the rectum, urethra or bladder usually present early on.

Acute bleeding usually originates from the urethra and most often can be controlled with local pressure. If local pressure is unable to achieve hemostasis, then placing a larger catheter (20F) in the urethra alone may stop the bleeding. If necessary, placing a suture around the bleeding site (with the catheter in place) will stop the bleeding in almost all cases. It is not unusual for localized hematomas to spontaneously drain through the vagina or suture line. This usually occurs a week or greater after surgery as the hematomas liquefy. The blood characteristically appears dark and old, and is not accompanied by clots. Although frightening to the patient, no treatment is indicated.

The genitalia and perineum have an excellent blood supply, so infections should be rare and seldom require more than a broad-spectrum antibiotic. Skin slough or loss is also rare, and should be treated conservatively. Separation of the suture line can occur, most often at the posterior perineum due to the pressure and stretching that occurs with dilation. Separations should be treated conservatively with antibiotic ointment, most will heal without consequence. Dilation should not be discontinued, and is critical at this stage. Failure to adequately dilate in the immediate postoperative period will likely result in severe vaginal stenosis. No attempt at immediate secondary closure of the dehiscence is indicated since it is a contaminated wound and would likely fail. In some cases, dehiscence may result in the development of a posterior web, which can be easily revised at a later stage.

Partial or complete clitoral necrosis may occur and should be treated conservatively with antibacterial ointments. In the majority of cases, the neurovascular bundle and a portion of the clitoris is still present and will usually maintain good sensitivity.

Urinary retention due to swelling and/or temporary peripheral nerve injury (neuropraxia) should be treated with replacement of a catheter for 5-7 days. Flomax is helpful, and this is almost always temporary. Early strictures are very rare.

A patient may lose a portion of the added skin graft and pass it out through the vagina. This usually occurs at least 2 weeks from surgery, and typically due to excessive skin grafting into the vagina. It is not accompanied with bleeding and the sloughed skin appears nonviable. Recovery is uneventful and patients should continue to dilate. A more severe scenario is expulsion of the entire vaginal skin lining, which occurs earlier (usually within the first postoperative week) and is frequently accompanied with at least some bleeding.

While uncommon, in most cases it is a disastrous complication and the patient will require surgical intervention, typically one year later to re-line the vagina.

Delayed / long-term postoperative maintenance and considerations

Adherence to the dilation regimen is critical to healing and maintaining vaginal depth and girth. After the initial healing period, dilation must continue regularly for at least one year postoperatively. The depth and the width of the vagina should be checked regularly as one tapers down the dilation schedule. If it is noticed that vaginal depth or width are diminishing either by patient report or in-office examination, the dilation schedule should be increased. If the patient experiences difficulty with dilation due to discomfort, instillation of lubricant ahead of the dilator with either a 3cc syringe, or the applicator device supplied with vaginal antifungals may be helpful. Patients may develop a sensitivity to the preservative in the water based lubricant; simply changing the brand of lubricant is often an effective solution.

Loss of vaginal girth due to inadequate dilation can often be remedied by increasing dilation frequency; loss of vaginal depth is more difficult to address by dilation alone. Persistent pain or otherwise problematic dilation should be discussed with the surgeon. Other possible causes of painful or inadequate dilation include a small pelvic inlet or muscle spasm and vaginismus. Approaches may include but are not limited to botulinum toxin injections, removal of webbing at the entry of the vagina, and/or a referral to a physical therapist that specializes in pelvic pain and pelvic floor issues.

The vagina is skin-lined and under normal conditions is colonized with a combination of skin flora as well as some vaginal species; a study of vaginal flora in a mix of transgender women with and without symptoms of odor and discharge found Staphylococcus, Streptococcus, Enterococcus, Corynebacterium, Mobiluncus, and Bacteroides species to be most common. Lactobacilli were found in only 1 of 30 women, and candida was not found. There was no correlation between the presence of vaginal symptoms and any one particular species.[1] These findings suggest that vaginal discharge and odor in transgender women is unlikely to due to common causes in non-transgender women such as bacterial dysbiosis or candida; indeed the lack of a mucosa or low pH are consistent with this study's findings of rare lactobacilli and no candida. In most cases discharge is most likely due to sebum, dead skin or keratin debris, or retained semen or lubricant.

Since the vagina does not contain a mucosa, routine cleaning or douching with soapy water should be adequate to maintain hygiene. Initially the patient should douche daily during frequent dilation. Douching can be reduced to 2-3 times a week when dilation is less frequent. If odor or discharge persists, an examination for lesions or granulation tissue

should be performed. Use of a solution of vinegar or 25% povidine iodine in water for 2-3 days may help in cases of flora overgrowth or imbalance, after which the patient can return to regular soap and water cleaning. If the drainage and odor persist, an empiric 5-day course of vaginal metronidazole is reasonable.

It is reasonable to consider a yearly visual pelvic exam to screen for lesions, granulation tissue, or undesired loss of depth and girth, though no evidence exists to support this recommendation. Since the vagina is skin lined, there is a risk of developing the same skin cancers that occur on the penile and scrotal skin (squamous cell, basal cell, melanoma). Other skin disorders such as psoriasis can also affect the vagina and should be treated similarly. If indicated, a prostate exam may be performed endovaginally since the rectal approach may be obscured by the new presence of the vaginal walls in between the rectum and the prostate.

A far less common approach to vaginoplasty is the use of either colon or small bowel to line the vaginal vault. This technique has the advantages of diminished need for dilation, greater depth and is naturally self-lubricating. However, this approach requires abdominal surgery with a risk of serious or even life-threatening complications. The primary indication for an intestinal approach is the revision of prior penile-inversion vaginoplasties. Since the secretion is digestive there is a risk of malodor and frequent secretions, and secretions are constant rather than only with arousal. Wearing panty liners or pads may be necessary for the long term. Bacterial overgrowth (diversion colitis) is common and may present with a greenish discharge, treatment includes. The bowel lining is also not as durable as skin. Use of intestinal tissue also places the vagina at risk of diseases of the bowel including inflammatory bowel disease, arterio-venous malformations (AVM) or neoplasms; screening or diagnostic evaluations for these conditions should be performed as indicated.

Fistulas

The most common fistula is a rectovaginal fistula. These usually occur at the midline within 5 cm of the vaginal opening, and are almost universally the result of a surgical injury to the rectum. Small fistulas may only pass flatus, while larger fistulas can allow stool to drain through the vagina. A temporary diverting colostomy may be required for hygiene. Dilation should continue to avoid closure of the vagina, with the plan to repair the fistula in a minimum of 6 months.

Urethrovaginal fistulas present with urine leakage from the vagina. The majority of cases do not need or require immediate intervention, and in most cases the patient will still be continent. The patient should be counseled that they will be more susceptible to urinary tract infections--particularly after intercourse. Voiding promptly after intercourse and/or

acidifying the urine with juices or cranberry pills is usually adequate preventive care. Fistulas between the bladder and vagina are the least common, but are the most difficult to manage. A foley catheter in the bladder will divert a majority, but not all of the urine; in general surgical intervention will be required.

Granulation tissue

Granulation tissue in the vagina is the result of delayed healing and is common. The need for frequent dilation in the early post-operative period exacerbates the problem by causing repeated trauma to the area of granulation. The typical complaint is of mildly blood-streaked yellowish discharge. In most cases this will heal as the need for frequent dilations diminishes over time. If persistent, regular silver nitrate treatments and topical treatment of steroid cream (triamcinolone) or medical grade honey (Medihoney) will speed the healing. Silver nitrate can be applied to granulation areas until cautery is observed with resultant grey scabbing and coagulation. Steroid creams or honey can be applied on the tip of the dilator. Long term, the penile skin lined vagina should be very durable.

Urinary tract infections (UTIs)

Urinary tract infections are not uncommon, since the urethra is shortened during a vaginoplasty. Proper hygiene and hydration are generally adequate preventive measures. A patient who has recurrent urinary tract infections should be evaluated for a urethral stricture. A simple diagnostic test is to attempt to pass a 16F catheter into the bladder to rule out strictures, including post-bulbar or meatal stenosis. Patients with a mucosal flap causing a large meatus will require meticulous hygiene and possibly prophylaxis. Most patients will see a reduction in their ability to hold larger volumes of urine over longer times as a consequence of the involution of the prostate. Rarely some may even experience urgency incontinence. Bladder relaxants like tolterodine or darifenacin are helpful in these cases.

Sensation and orgasm

No major sensory nerves should have been divided during surgery, so sensitivity should not be adversely affected after vaginoplasty. In an outcome study published in 2002, 86% of the author's patients were orgasmic.[2] Pre-operative functionality is an important indicator, though it is possible that a previously anorgasmic patient will be orgasmic following vaginoplasty. The combination of prolonged estrogen/anti-androgen therapy and orchiectomy during surgery may result in a reported decline in libido for some patients, which is discussed elsewhere in these guidelines.

References

1. Weyers S, Verstraelen H, Gerris J, Monstrey S, dos Santos Lopes Santiago G, Saerens B, et al. Microflora of the penile skin-lined neovagina of transsexual women. BMC Microbiol. 2009;9(1):102.
2. Lawrence AA. Factors associated with satisfaction or regret following male-to-female sex reassignment surgery. Arch Sex Behav. 2003 Aug;32(4):299-315.

Phalloplasty and Metodioplasty

Introduction

Phalloplasty in transgender men involves the creation of a penis using any one of a number of procedures; either a free flap or pedicled flap of skin, usually taken from the arm (radial forearm free-flap, RFF) or anterior lateral thigh (anterior lateral thigh pedicled flap phalloplasty, ALT). In a free flap procedure, tissue is completely removed from the donor site along with its blood supply. The blood supply is then anastomosed to a recipient blood supply at the site of transfer. In a pedicled flap procedure, the tissue is never severed from its blood supply. Using either procedure, the donor skin is rolled into a tube like structure and grafted to the inguinal area. In order to minimize the risk of fistula, most commonly this procedure is performed after a hysterectomy and vaginectomy (or vaginal mucosal ablation) is performed. Scrotoplasty may also be performed using skin flaps. Scrotoplasty may be performed with or without testicular implants. A urethral hookup may be performed using cheek or vaginal mucosa, and an erectile implant may be placed. Often the entire phalloplasty procedure involves multiple staged surgeries, with earlier stages allowing skin grafts to develop local blood supply prior to cosmetic procedures to complete the phalloplasty. Depending on the surgical approach, the penis may or may not have intact erotic sensation.

Risks associated with phalloplasty

There are general risks associated with any surgery, including infection, bleeding, damage to surrounding tissues, and pain. Specific to phalloplasty in transgender men, there is risk of flap loss, urethral complications, wound breakdown, pelvic bleeding or pain, bladder or rectal injury, lack of sensation, prolonged need for drainage, or need for further procedures. Donor site risks include unsightly scarring, wound breakdown, granulation tissue formation, decreased mobility, hematoma, pain and decreased sensation. If patients are discharged from their surgeon's care and are not local, they should see their primary care provider every three months during the first year.

Some of the most common complications are listed below. Different techniques and approaches can have varying levels of complexity. Different surgeons may also have different complications rates; understanding what procedures different surgeons perform,

their experience, frequency with which they perform these procedures, and complication rates is helpful.

Immediate/early (within one month) complications after free or pedicled flap phalloplasty

Wound infections typically occur within the first few weeks after surgery and can present as cellulitis, fungal infection or both. Antibiotics and antifungal cream are usually sufficient for treatment. In some cases intravenous antibiotics may be required.

Wound breakdown is common and typically occurs at points where multiple suture lines meet (i.e. perineal-scrotal junction and base of phallus). Most wound breakdown issues can be managed with local wound care (wet to dry dressing changes) as the wounds heal by secondary intention. Some wound breakdowns may require debridement(s), and fewer may require skin grafting or further surgical procedure(s) to close the wound.

Urinary catheter difficulties present as a clogged catheter or bladder spasms. This is managed by making sure there are no kinks or twists in the tubing, flushing the catheter, and antispasmodic medications (anticholinergics). Urinary tract infections (UTIs) in the setting of a urinary catheter can develop and present with a constellation of symptoms including cloudy urine, odorous urine, increased bladder spasms or leakage around catheter. These symptoms may or may not present with fever or other systemic symptoms. If a patient does not have a constellation of these symptoms, it is unlikely to be a true UTI even if the urinalysis (UA) and urine culture (UCx) demonstrate laboratory findings consistent with infection.

Flap loss is rare and typically occurs due to technical error (misplaced microsurgical suture or vascular pedicle kinking/compression). Flap loss typically presents within the first 72 hours, and if recognized early (within hours) can be salvaged by emergent return to the operating room. On return to the OR, drainage of a hematoma compressing the vascular pedicle, revision of the arterial or venous anastomosis, or in some cases mechanical thrombectomy with balloon catheters or instilling tissue plasminogen activator (tPA) into the flap can save a flap from loss. Even with these measures, partial or complete flap loss is possible. Hypercoagulable states can predispose a patient to clotting after surgery and flap loss. Undiagnosed clotting disorder such as Factor V Leiden, antiphospholipid syndrome, prothrombin gene mutation G20210A, antithrombin III deficiency, Protein C and S deficiency, and hyperhomocysteinemia should be considered in the case of flap thrombosis.

Pelvic or groin hematomas can occur, and may be managed by drains, or may require surgical drainage. While medical deep vein thrombosis prophylaxis with unfractionated

heparin or lovenox may place the patient at higher risk of hematoma formation, this risk must be weighed against the risk of deep vein thrombosis and pulmonary emboli. Risk assessment models exist to help determine individualized perioperative anticoagulation modalities.[1] While these risk assessments will generally be performed by surgeons, primary care providers with knowledge of an individual patient's increased risk for thromboembolism or perioperative bleeding should notify surgeons pre-operatively.

Rectal injury is a rare but serious complication. The vaginectomy portion of the procedure involves developing a plane between the posterior wall of the vagina and the anterior wall of the rectum. Laceration with scissors or cautery can cause this injury. Inadvertent injury to the rectal wall can present acutely (immediately known and repaired) or subacutely (days to weeks later). Recognition of a rectal injury in the subacute period can be based on constitutional symptoms of fever, chills, malaise, or more overt symptoms of sepsis. The portion of the rectum in the surgical field is extraperitoneal, so abdominal pain or peritoneal signs would be unusual. Drainage of stool from the perineal incisions, scrotum or base of the phallus indicates formation of a fistula between the rectal wall and the skin. Such wounds require hospitalization and general surgical involvement in the care plan. A short-term colostomy may be required to divert the fecal stream and allow the fistula to close. Washout of a pelvic abscess and closure of the rectal fistula, with secondary wound healing may be required.

Long-term complications after free or pedicled flap phalloplasty

Urethral strictures typically present 6-12 months after surgery with symptoms of a weak stream, straining with urination, and sometimes concomitant fistulas secondary to distal obstruction from the stricture. This will require surgical intervention with either dilation or urethroplasty.

Wound contraction and scarring are complications that occur any time the skin is cut, but the degree to which they occur is highly variable between patients. Some patients form scar more robustly than others. All scars contract with time as myofibroblasts within the wound become active in the first 2-9 days.[2] Wound contracture is a natural mechanism to decrease the defect size, decreasing the effective surface area that must be healed. However, wound contracture can lead to distortion of surrounding tissues and contour defects. Wounds that close by secondary intent show more contracture than primary closure.

Scars can be thin lines, or can widen or become "proud" (hypertrophic), or even pass beyond the borders of the scar (keloid). Hypertrophic scars can successfully be revised by excision and reclosure with skin tension reducing measures to decrease recurrence.

Keloids occur infrequently, often in people predisposed to keloid formation. The recurrence of keloids after simple excision and closure is very high (at least 70%). Steroid injections, silicone and compressive dressings, and radiation therapy have been offered as treatment modalities, with limited improvements in recurrence rates.

Granulation tissue is common at the donor site around and within the skin graft. Its appearance represents an over exuberant proliferation of fibroblasts and small blood vessels. Most granulation tissue can be treated with topical application of silver nitrate applied periodically over several office visits, as needed. Silver nitrate can lead to dark discoloration of the treated tissues, which can persist for weeks to months. However, granulation tissue rarely requires more involved treatment.

Corona flattening can occur on occasion and may require revision surgery done at the same time of the 2nd stage surgery (typically penile and testicular implantation)

Erectile implants

Roughly nine months after the penis is created, the patient can have a penile implant placed to allow rigidity for penetration. Currently there are no FDA approved implants specifically created for transgender patients. As such, implants created for non-transgender males with erectile dysfunction are rigidly fixed to the pubic bone. Complications can include infection and erosion.

Infection is the most common complication of the penile implant. Pre and post op antibiotics reduce the risk, as well as intraoperative sterile technique. If an implant becomes infected, it typically has to be removed. A new implant may be replaced six months later.

Erosion is when the implant protrudes through the skin of the phallus or the urethra. The presence of sensation in the phallus, and avoiding an excessively large implant reduce the risk of erosion. As with infection, erosion of an implant necessitates surgical removal.

Dysuria

Should a recently postop phalloplasty patient have dysuria, the best approach is to obtain a urine culture. Urinalysis is of little value as white and red cells can be detectable in normal post op patients for months after reconstruction. If a urine culture is positive, the infection should be treated with culture specific antibiotics. If it is negative, the most likely culprit is a urethral stricture, which should be evaluated by the surgeon who performed the phalloplasty, or if unavailable, a local urologist.

Metoidioplasty

Metoidioplasty (metaoidioplasty) is a Greek word that means "towards male genitalia." Testosterone causes growth of the clitoris; metoidioplasty uses only local tissue (no grafting) to create a smaller, 1 to 3 inch phallus with girth approximately the size of someone's thumb. Patients may opt to have a urethra placed in the phallus, but not all patients choose to do this. A scrotum can also be created from the labia majora and a vaginectomy may be performed. Because metoidioplasty is a shorter procedure, occasionally hysterectomy is performed at the same time as metoidioplasty. Some surgeons may use tissue expanders to create the scrotum, while others do not find this necessary. Testicular implants are typically placed at a second stage approximately 4 months later. While the phallus is not large enough to accept a penile implant, erections are possible since the procedure involves the use of natal clitoral and other genital tissues.

Complications associated with metoidioplasty are very similar to free flap phalloplasty, except for flap loss since no flap is used. Wound breakdown, infection, urethral stricture and fistula are all seen in similar anatomic sites to that of free flap phalloplasty, although the incidence is lower in metoidioplasty. Risks such as coronal flattening do not occur in metoidioplasty, as the corona does not require sculpting in metoidioplasty. Management of complications similar to as is detailed in the phalloplasty section.

References

1. Pannucci CJ, Bailey SH, Dreszer G, Fisher Wachtman C, Zumsteg JW, Jaber RM, et al. Validation of the Caprini risk assessment model in plastic and reconstructive surgery patients. J Am Coll Surg. 2011 Jan;212(1):105-12.
2. Hinz B. Formation and function of the myofibroblast during tissue repair. J Invest Dermatol. 2007 Mar;127(3):526-37.

Hysterectomy

Introduction

Hysterectomy with and without salpingectomy/oophorectomy is considered by WPATH to be a medically necessary component of gender affirming surgical therapy for those transgender men who choose to seek this procedure.[1] It is unknown how many transgender men desire and obtain hysterectomy for the purposes of gender affirmation or in the context of gender dysphoria. In the National Transgender Discrimination Survey, 21% of trans men surveyed had undergone hysterectomy.[2] 58% desired a hysterectomy at some time in the future, and 21% had no desire for a hysterectomy, It is unclear what differentiated individuals who had already undergone hysterectomy from those who desired the procedure in the future, though access to care and financial considerations are likely contributors. Also unclear is how reproductive desires may play into decisions about

hysterectomy and or oophorectomy. Furthermore, it is unclear from this study what proportion of these hysterectomies were due to a medically pathologic condition rather than gender dysphoria, since hysterectomy is one of the most common non-obstetrical surgical procedures.

A study of 134 transgender men reported a diversity of indications for hysterectomy, though most procedures were performed for gender affirmation. In that study, 58% underwent hysterectomy because organs were incongruent with current gender identity, 47% for further physical masculinization, 43% to facilitate a change in legal documents, and 37% to avoid future gynecological appointments. However, this same study also noted that for many this procedure was seen as "preventive" in 59%, was performed because of pre-existing medical problems in 26%, specifically for "tumors, cysts, fibroids or endometriosis" in 22% or to stop extreme bleeding and cramping in 22%.[3] Since widespread explicit insurance coverage for hysterectomy for purposes of gender affirmation is both recent and evolving, it is possible that some of the decisions to perform hysterectomy in the setting of pathologic conditions may have been hastened by coexisting gender dysphoria.

Surgical approaches

Best practice for the surgical approach to hysterectomy in transgender men has not been studied. Hysterectomy may be performed abdominally, laparoscopically, or vaginally. Based on existing evidence, the American Congress of Obstetricians and Gynecologists has stated that for patients in whom the approach is appropriate, a vaginal approach has the fewest complications and blood loss, quickest recovery, and is the most cost-effective.[4] For transgender men, vaginal hysterectomy has the added benefit of leaving no abdominal scars. Initial data [5,6] support the notion that vaginal hysterectomy is appropriate for transgender men. Many other studies have noted that laparoscopic hysterectomy, the second least invasive form of hysterectomy, is also possible and can successfully be accomplished without additional complications.[7-11]

Hysterectomy has been successfully combined with other gender affirming surgeries performed on the same day in the same operating suite including vaginectomy, mastectomy, and genital reconstruction including metoidioplasty and phalloplasty.[10,12] Hysterectomy itself does not largely differ, however some modifications in concurrent surgeries and extent of dissection may differ depending on the goals of the transgender patient. For example if a transgender man undergoing hysterectomy has no plans for penetrative vaginal intercourse in the future, the vaginal cuff closure could be much more exterior, such that less of a vaginal orifice remains. Similarly, vaginectomy (removal of vaginal mucosal tissue) and colpocleisis (closure of the vaginal canal) could be performed

if no vaginal orifice is desired, as long as there is no desire for future genital reconstructive surgery that would make use of the vaginal mucosa (for urethral lengthening etc). Finally, consideration of whether to retain or remove the ovaries and fallopian tubes at the time of surgery is also a personal decision and will be based on considerations of patient desire, future fertility, plans for exogenous (steroid) hormone administration, and other pathology that may be aided or exacerbated by ovarian removal (e.g., endometriosis).

While the WPATH Standards of Care require two mental health assessments prior to hysterectomy, this has been challenged academically [13] and in practice [7] given that non-transgender women may undergo a hysterectomy for equally or less compelling complaints without similar restrictions.

References

1. World Professional Association for Transgender Health (WPATH)(link is external). Standards of care for the health of transsexual, transgender, and gender nonconforming people, 7th Version. WPATH; 2012 [cited 2016 Mar 10].
2. Grant JM, Mottet LA, Tanis J, Harrison J, Herman J, Keisling M. Injustice at every turn: a report of the National Transgender Discrimination Survey(link is external). National Center for Transgender Equality and National Gay and Lesbian Task Force; 2011 [cited 2016 Mar 17].
3. Rachlin K, Hansbury G, Pardo ST. Hysterectomy and oophorectomy experiences of female-to-male transgender individuals. Int J Transgenderism. 2010 Oct 12;12(3):155-66.
4. Obedin-Maliver J, Light A, DeHaan G, Steinauer J, Jackson R. Vaginal hysterectomy as a viable option for female-to-male transgender men: Obstet Gynecol. 2014 May;123:126S - 127S.
5. Kaiser C, Stoll I, Ataseven B, Morath S, Schaff J, Eiermann W. [Vaginal hysterectomy and bilateral adnexectomy for female to male transsexuals in an interdisciplinary concept] Vaginale Hysterektomie und beidseitige Adnexektomie in interdisziplinärem Konzept bei Frau zu Mann - Transsexualismus. Handchir - Mikrochir - Plast Chir. 2011 Aug;43(04):240-5.
6. O'Hanlan KA, Dibble SL, Young-Spint M. Total laparoscopic hysterectomy for female-to-male transsexuals. Obstet Gynecol. 2007 Nov;110(5):1096-101.
7. Bartos P, Struppl D, Popelka P. [Role of total laparoscopic hysterectomy in genital reconstruction in transsexuals]. Ceska Gynekol Ceska Lek Spolecnost J Ev Purkyne. 2001 May;66(3):193-5.

8. Chapin DS. Laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy in female-to-male transsexuals. Plast Reconstr Surg. 1993 Apr;91(5):962.
9. Ergeneli MH, Duran EH, Ozcan G, Erdogan M. Vaginectomy and laparoscopically assisted vaginal hysterectomy as adjunctive surgery for female-to-male transsexual reassignment: preliminary report. Eur J Obstet Gynecol Reprod Biol. 1999 Nov;87(1):35-7.
10. Perrone AM, Scifo MC, Martelli V, Casadio P, Morselli PG, Pelusi G, et al. Hysterectomy and bilateral salpingoovariectomy in a transsexual subject without visible scarring. Diagn Ther Endosc. 2010;2010.
11. Ott J, van Trotsenburg M, Kaufmann U, Schrögendorfer K, Haslik W, Huber JC, et al. Combined hysterectomy/salpingo-oophorectomy and mastectomy is a safe and valuable procedure for female-to-male transsexuals. J Sex Med. 2010 Jun;7(6):2130-8.
12. Weiss E, Green J. Transgender patients care. Am J Obstet Gynecol. 2014 Aug;211(2):185-6.

Binding, packing, and tucking

Tucking

Tucking allows a visibly smooth crotch contour. In this practice, the testicles (if present) are moved into the inguinal canal, and moving the penis and scrotum posteriorly in the perineal region. Tight fitting underwear, or a special undergarment known as a *gaffe* is then worn to maintain this alignment. In some cases, adhesive or even duct tape may be used. In addition to local skin effects, this practice could result in urinary trauma or infections, as well as testicular complaints, which are covered elsewhere.

Packing

Packing is the placing of a penile prosthesis in one's underwear, giving both an outward appearance as well as reducing gender dysphoria.

Binding

Binding involves the use of tight fitting sports bras, shirts, ace bandages, or a specially made *binder* to provide a flat chest contour. In some people with larger breasts, multiple garments may be used, and breathing may be restricted. Prolonged binding may result in breast pain, local skin irritation, or fungal infections.

Hair Removal

Introduction

The management of unwanted hair is often a challenge for transgender people, for many reasons. Barriers include access to trans-experienced aesthetic providers, transportation, affordability, and confusion regarding the options, risks and benefits.[1,2] While insurance coverage for hair removal in transgender persons is expanding, it remains inconsistent and can be a significant source of frustration and anxiety for both patient and provider.[3,4]

Transgender men, transgender women, and other gender nonconforming individuals may seek services; a care plan for each patient is best individualized according to their personal needs and transition goals. Transgender woman typically seek hair removal on the face, neck, as well as in the genital area in the case of pre-operative preparation for vaginoplasty.[5,6] Transgender men typically seek hair reduction on forearm or thigh future graft sites in preparation for phaloplasty.[5,7] While epilation (plucking, waxing, or Epi-Lady type devices) and the use of depilatories (chemicals) offer temporary measures, many seek one of several modalities that offer permanent hair reduction/removal: light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation (laser) hair removal (LHR) and electrolysis hair removal (EHR).[8,9] As with any referral for care, it is ideal to establish relationships with experienced, accessible practitioners with a positive reputation in the transgender community.

Methods: pros and cons of each

The hair growth cycle consists of three successive stages that include the anagen (growth) phase, the catagen (transitional) phase, and the telogen (resting) phase. Each strand is at its own stage of development. Time in each phase can vary by location, from an anagen phase of one to two months on the body, to two to six years on the scalp. Patterns of hair growth may also vary based on gender and ethnicity.[10] The effectiveness of both methods rely to some extent on the timing of the hair growth cycle, with the ideal response being when hairs are in the active (anagen) growth phase. Both require multiple sessions, and since effectiveness is approximately 85-90%, combined LHR and EHR may offer the best result for many. Lifelong treatment is often required for sustained effect.[10-12]

Laser Hair Removal:The use of lasers is considered a 'medical procedure' and offers the use of light to selectively target dark, coarse hairs.[13] The pigment in dark hairs absorbs the light to create heat that is transmitted down the shaft to destroy the follicle. It treats larger surface areas and is less time consuming than EHR. Treatments are typically every 4-8 weeks, depending on the treatment location, as the hair growth cycles vary by area. Safety and effectiveness may vary depending on the platform used (diode, ruby, neodymium-doped yttrium aluminum garnet; [Nd: YAG], etc.), patient skin type and hair

characteristics. LHR is generally ineffective on thin, light, red, blonde or gray hairs. A wavelength of 1064 (Nd: YAG) is the only wavelength considered safe for dark-skinned individuals (Fitzpatrick skin types 5 or 6).[9,11]

LHR is FDA-approved for permanent hair *reduction*. Patients are required to be evaluated by a medical provider (NP/PA/MD, etc.) prior to being treated; regulations on the qualifications and licensure of the laser operator vary by US state, with some states requiring registered nurses.[10]

As with any light-based treatment that uses selective photothermolysis, overheating can result in redness, blisters, burns, and subsequent hyper or hypo-pigmentation.[14-16] The majority of these are infrequent and temporary; however care should be taken with any patient with a history of keloids (test spot on low visibility area) and LHR is contraindicated in conditions that might flare in reaction to light exposure, such as lupus erythematous [17] It is suggested that patients with a history of herpes simplex outbreaks be aware of the potential for a light-stimulated outbreak (in treatment area) and have antivirals available for self-treatment. Treatments should be avoided when photosensitizing medications are being used (see table [18]). Do not treat areas of active infection. Flashing lights have been known to induce seizures in susceptible patients, so patients should be screened for this risk.[19] Treatments on the face require occlusion of both eyes to protect from retinal exposure and damage. Protective, wavelength specific, eye-ware is used during non-facial body treatments.[20]

Relative CONTRAINDICATIONS to laser hair removal:

- History of melanoma, raised moles, suspicious lesions, keloid scar formation, healing problems, active infections, open lesions, hives, herpetic lesions, cold sores, tattoos or permanent make-up in area of treatment, recent use of isotretinoin, tetracycline, or St. John's wort in the last year, autoimmune diseases such as lupus, scleroderma, vitiligo.[17,18]
- While not a contraindication to treatment, the following drugs may cause increased hair growth: penicillin, cyclosporins, corticosteroids, haldol, phenytoin, thyroid medications.[18]

Electrolysis involves use of an electric current with a very fine needle-shaped probe to destroy the root of individual hair follicles. There are three types of electrolysis; galvanic (direct electrical current produces a chemical reaction), thermolysis (diathermy: short-wave which produces heat) and blend (combination of galvanic and thermolysis).[21] Since electrolysis involves direct mechanical destruction of the root, it can be used on all hair colors and skin types. Treatments are typically weekly and lasting up to 1 hour, based on

patient pain tolerance. Targeting individual hairs may be time consuming and costly, however is very effective when used to treat hairs that have not or will not respond to LHR. Newer technologies/epilators (27MHz frequency) offer a more comfortable treatment and may be safer than older model machines (14MHz frequency). As the frequency is increased, so is the heat produced, resulting in improved effectiveness.[22] Electrolysis is FDA-approved for permanent hair *removal*. In the US, electrologists are licensed in their state of practice and practice independently.

Some of the same risks associated with LHR also apply: redness, pigment changes, and avoiding areas of active dermatitis or infection.[23] Patients with pacemakers are most safely treated with thermolysis, but should discuss with their cardiologist prior to treatment. Home laser or electrolysis devices have not demonstrated effectiveness and may cause harm.[24]

Managing pain during the procedure

At least some discomfort can be expected during either procedure.[25] Each patient is best assessed individually to determine the optimal approach for pain control. The response to each treatment can vary based on the location of treatment, level of hydration, anxiety and stress. Creating a soothing environment, the use of reassurance, deep-breathing, thoughtful orientation to the device, use of a 'test-spot,' pre-treatment with a cold compress and over-the-counter pain medication (acetaminophen) may all be helpful. It is best to avoid NSAIDS immediately prior and after treatments to minimize the risk of bruising. The use of narcotics is typically not needed, but may be appropriate in some cases.

Topical anesthetics:

Lidocaine-containing products (alone or in compounded form) should be provided to the patient initially and then as requested. Topical anesthetics reduce procedure-related pain with minimal side effects. Careful attention must be paid to the particular anatomic location, the total surface area covered, and the duration of anesthetic skin contact. Topical anesthetics can be applied 15-45 minutes prior to treatment and are typically removed during or after the procedure(s).[26-30] The use of EMLA (lidocaine 2.5% and procaine 2.5%) may have limited effect, primarily due to the prolonged onset of action and need for an occlusive barrier during the pre-treatment phase. The combination of benzocaine 20%, lidocaine 8% and tetracaine 4% (BLT) is a common and effective combination. This preparation should only be applied by a licensed medical provider or nurse, as application of excessive amounts can result in toxicity.

References

1. Roberts TK, Fantz CR. Barriers to quality health care for the transgender population. Clin Biochem. 2014 Jul;47(10-11):983-7.
2. Radix AE, Lelutiu-Weinberger C, Gamarel KE. Satisfaction and healthcare utilization of transgender and gender non-conforming individuals in NYC: a community-based participatory study. LGBT Health. 2014 Dec;1(4):302-8.
3. Human Rights Campaign(link is external). Finding Insurance for Transgender-Related Healthcare. Human Rights Campaign. [cited 2016 Mar 22].
4. Transgender Law Center(link is external). Recommendations for Transgender Health Care. [cited 2016 Mar 22].
5. Ginsberg BA, Calderon M, Seminara NM, Day D. A potential role for the dermatologist in the physical transformation of transgender people: A survey of attitudes and practices within the transgender community. J Am Acad Dermatol. 2016 Feb;74(2):303-8.
6. San Francisco Department of Public Health (SFDPH). Patient Education for Vaginoplasty(link is external). Transgender Health Services. [cited 2016 Mar 22].
7. San Francisco Department of Public Health (SFDPH). Patient Education for Phalloplasty(link is external). Transgender Health Services [cited 2016 Mar 22].
8. Haedersdal M, Wulf HC. Evidence-based review of hair removal using lasers and light sources. J Eur Acad Dermatol Venereol JEADV. 2006 Jan;20(1):9-20.
9. Sadighha A, Mohaghegh Zahed G. Meta-analysis of hair removal laser trials. Lasers Med Sci. 2009 Jan;24(1):21-5.
10. Shenenberger DW, Utecht LM. Removal of unwanted facial hair. Am Fam Physician. 2002 Nov 15;66(10):1907-11.
11. Battle EF. Advances in laser hair removal in skin of color. J Drugs Dermatol JDD. 2011 Nov;10(11):1235-9.
12. Somani N, Turvy D. Hirsutism: an evidence-based treatment update. Am J Clin Dermatol. 2014 Jul;15(3):247-66.
13. Mayo Clinic. Laser hair removal(link is external). Tests and Procedures. [cited 2016 Mar 22].
14. Bashour M. Laser Laser hair removal (link is external)Hair Removal. 2016 [cited 2016 Mar 22].

15. Lim SPR, Lanigan SW. A review of the adverse effects of laser hair removal. Lasers Med Sci. 2006 Sep;21(3):121-5.

16. Liew SH. Laser hair removal: guidelines for management. Am J Clin Dermatol. 2002;3(2):107-15.

17. WebMD. Lupus Health Center (link is external)WebMD. [cited 2016 Mar 22].

18. Levine JI. Photosensitizing medication list. 2008 [cited 2016 Mar 22].

19. Epilepsy Foundation. Photosensitivity and Seizures(link is external). Epilepsy Foundation. [cited 2016 Mar 22].

20. Parver DL, Dreher RJ, Kohanim S, Zimmerman P, Garrett G, Devisetty L, et al. Ocular injury after laser hair reduction treatment to the eyebrow. Arch Ophthalmol Chic Ill 1960. 2012 Oct;130(10):1330-4.

21. American Electrology Association. FAQs about permanent hair removal(link is external). [cited 2016 Mar 22].

22. American Institute of Education: Electrology Program. What's Your Frequency? Electrolysis and Electrology(link is external). [cited 2016 Mar 22].

23. WebMD. Electrolysis for Removing Hair(link is external). [cited 2016 Mar 22].

24. Hession MT, Markova A, Graber EM. A review of hand-held, home-use cosmetic laser and light devices. Dermatol Surg Off Publ Am Soc Dermatol Surg Al. 2015 Mar;41(3):307-20.

25. Aimonetti J-M, Ribot-Ciscar E. Pain management in photoepilation. J Cosmet Dermatol. 2015 Nov 21;

26. Chiang YZ, Al-Niaimi F, Madan V. Comparative efficacy and patient preference of topical anaesthetics in dermatological laser treatments and skin microneedling. J Cutan Aesthetic Surg. 2015 Sep;8(3):143-6.

27. Eidelman A, Weiss JM, Lau J, Carr DB. Topical anesthetics for dermal instrumentation: a systematic review of randomized, controlled trials. Ann Emerg Med. 2005 Oct;46(4):343-51.

28. Sobanko JF, Miller CJ, Alster TS. Topical anesthetics for dermatologic procedures: a review. Dermatol Surg Off Publ Am Soc Dermatol Surg Al. 2012 May;38(5):709-21.

29. Cohen JL. Pain management with a topical lidocaine and tetracaine 7%/7% cream with laser dermatologic procedures. J Drugs Dermatol JDD. 2013 Sep;12(9):986-9.

Vocal Health

Introduction

Voice and communication are crucial aspects of daily life for all humans. Within the transgender community voice and communication are often brought to the forefront when the incongruence between gender identity and voice/communication style are greatest. Aspects of voice and communication are highly related to gender [1] and culture.[2] These include pitch, intonation, loudness and stress patterns, voice quality, resonance, articulation, speech rate, language, and nonverbal communication.[3,4] Altering the aspects of voice and communication related to gender have been reported to reduce gender dysphoria while improving mental health and quality of life.[1]

There are many resources to help trans people identify communication characteristics that may be targeted to develop more gender specific communication style. These may include vocal coaches, theater professionals, singing teachers, and movement experts.[3] **Specialty trained speech language pathologists (SLPs) are best equipped to facilitate overall vocal health and efficiency**, in addition to behavioral changes related to voice and communication for transgender people.[1-3,5] Otolaryngologists with subspecialty training in laryngology are skilled in vocal fold surgery techniques (phonosurgery) which may act as an adjunct to voice therapy.

Approach to voice complaints

Transgender people may present with voice complaints related to quality change or fatigue that are unrelated to gender transition.[2] This could be non-organic, organic, iatrogenic, or idiopathic in nature (Table 1). It is important that a comprehensive voice evaluation is completed, including voice and communication needs related to gender transition, by a laryngologist and voice trained speech pathologist prior to initiating voice treatment. Evaluation should include a thorough laryngeal examination including videostroboscopy to assess the anatomy and physiology of structures related to voice production.

Table 1. Common Voice Complaints and Diagnosis

Origin	Diagnosis	Voice Complaints
Organic	• Nodules, Polyp(s), Cyst(s)	• Roughness, breathiness, pi

Table 1. Common Voice Complaints and Diagnosis

Origin	Diagnosis	Voice Complaints
	• Granuloma • Scar	• Voice fatigue • Increased vocal effort
Non-Organic	• Muscle Tension Dysphonia	• Roughness • Voice fatigue • Increased vocal effort
Iatrogenic	• Vocal Fold Motion Impairment Scar	• Breathiness, roughness, inc • Voice Fatigue • Increased effort
Idiopathic	• Vocal Fold Paralysis/Paresis	• Breathiness • Voice Fatigue • Increased effort

The overarching treatment goal for transgender people who present with voice and communication complaints is to aid in achieving a gender congruent voice in an efficient and safe manner. Treatment should be patient specific and can be accomplished through behavioral and medical/surgical intervention.

Voice feminization

In a study of self-perceptions of trans females, it was found that the strongest contributor to communication satisfaction was voice.[6] The components of voice production include pitch, resonance, intonation and intensity.

Pitch

Pitch may be perceived as the most important factor for voice and subsequently gender identification.[2,7,8] A strong marker for the perception of female voice is an average speaking pitch of 180 Hz in a range of approximately 140 to 300 Hz.[9,10] The average non-transgender female pitch is approximately 225Hz while the average non-transgender male pitch is approximately 125Hz. A pitch range that is considered gender neutral generally falls between 155-185Hz.[11] It has been demonstrated that increasing speaking pitch impacts the degree of voice feminization.[9,12,13] However, increasing pitch into the female range does not necessarily result in listener perception of the speaker as female.[7,14] Research indicates that other voice characteristics such as speaking pitch range, intonation, resonance, and voice quality play varying roles in the perception of femininity.[5] Similarly, pitch floor (the bottom of the pitch range) and the proximity of the usual speaking pitch to this floor is thought to influence the perceived maleness of voice, rather than the speaking pitch alone.[14]

Resonance

There is some discrepancy in the literature on the role of resonance, as studied through formant (harmonic) frequencies. Harmonic frequencies are multiples of the root speaking pitch; the combination and configuration of formant frequencies for any given sound determine its "tone." Contributors to vocal resonance include the length of the pharynx and size of the sinuses, which in transgender women who have undergone a male puberty are fixed in a larger size than with non-transgender women. One report suggests a primary role of resonance in perceptual identification of the speaker's gender.[10] However, another study reports that a combination of both pitch and resonance are found to contribute to perceived femininity and should be addressed.[4,15]

Intonation

Intonation, or variability in pitch during speaking, is a recommended component of behavioral intervention for voice feminization. In one study, there were no significant differences in overall intonation patterns observed between genders. Transgender participants who were identified as female had a larger number of upward intonation patterns and larger semi-tone range within utterances than other groups. Transgender women who were misidentified as male had fewer upward and more downward intonation patterns than females and transgender females who were correctly identified.[16]

Intensity and other voice characteristics contributing to perception of gender

Increasing breathiness [9,17] using lower vocal intensity [13,17] and avoiding vocal fry [13] can contribute to voice feminization.

Behavioral Intervention

The components of voice production are primarily addressed through behavioral voice therapy. It is thought that the total number of voice therapy sessions, in addition to living full time as female might be predictive of response to behavioral intervention.[18]

Two common voice therapy techniques include flow phonation and resonant voice therapy. Flow phonation targets balanced exhalation of airflow during voice production to achieve vocal efficiency and may aid in altering breathiness and intensity. Resonant voice therapy focuses on achieving easy phonation while experiencing the energy or vibration of sound in the oral cavity therefore altering resonance.[19] When used with transgender women, oral resonance therapy is reported to increase femininity by altering resonance to more closely approximate female resonance with a spontaneous increase in pitch.[4] Vocal function exercises, a systematic program of physiologic voice exercises that are designed to strengthen and balance the laryngeal musculature and to achieve balance between airflow and muscular effort,[20] do not seem to improve therapy outcomes in trans women.[18]

Long-term gains have been reported related to listeners' perception of gender following voice therapy that targeted primarily pitch and resonance.[15] Voice therapy has also been shown to generate changes that significantly impact listener's perception of femininity; however femininity is perceived as higher immediately following therapy than 15 months later.[21] Trans women having varying voice goals and may choose to use feminine communication patterns all of the time or situationally.[1,17] The decreased perception of femininity over time, mentioned above, and the variable application of feminine voice may indicate the place for a maintenance program following voice therapy. While research is required in this area, intermittent ?checking-in' and recalibration of voice components may be warranted.

Studies indicate that trans women attain improvement in voice following voice therapy and most are satisfied with the outcome.[17,21] If, after a course of behavioral therapy the desired outcome is not achieved, surgical intervention may be considered.[22] At this time, surgical intervention primarily targets alteration in pitch. Pitch change alone has been shown to be insufficient for listeners to accurately identify gender [7,14] and should not be considered the initial or only treatment for voice feminization.

Effects of hormone therapy on voice

Hormone therapy in trans women, while resulting in reduction of testosterone levels and increases in levels of progesterone and estrogen, has not been perceived to have a significant effect on voice or the perception of feminine voice.[23] Vocal pitch is a function of the overall size and mass of the vocal folds, and there are few if any formal studies in the English literature that support that hormonal manipulation in post pubescent males will

significantly alter vocal pitch. During male puberty, exposure to testosterone results in hypertrophy of the laryngeal muscles, cartilage and mucosa. This results in the characteristic voice changes that occur in pubescent males.

While withdrawing testosterone result in a modest degree of mucosal and muscle thinning, this effect takes years and cannot reverse the significant hypertrophy caused by the previous exposure. Thus pitch, which is related to vocal fold mass and size remains lowered, and the overall effect on voice from withdrawal of androgens is minimal once these changes have occurred. This is consistent with what is seen in females who have been exposed to androgens for the treatment of medical conditions. Once the exposure has occurred and the vocal pitch is lowered, the withdrawal of androgens is not generally associated with a significant re-elevation of pitch. Therefore, if behavioral interventions do not result in a sustained improvement in patient satisfaction with the characteristics of voice, then surgery may be considered.

Surgical considerations

As previously stated, pitch of voice is related to overall vocal fold mass and the tension of the vocal fold while the patient is producing voice. We can all voluntarily increase the tension in our vocal folds to elevate pitch. This, however, requires continuous muscular effort. With attention, training and time, this increased effort may become habitual. However, even successful patients often complain of a sensation of vocal effort and/or fatigue at the end of the day. Therefore, surgeries have been designed to elevate pitch by either altering vocal fold tension, mass, or both. The tendency of biological structures to relax when artificially stretched or tensed represents a significant challenge to surgical approaches to voice modification. Furthermore, procedures which attempt to alter the tension by scarring the vibratory portion of the vocal fold, or reducing the overall vocal fold mass, risk inducing negative alteration in the delicate tissue of the vocal folds, which must vibrate at high frequencies to produce normal vocal quality.

Surgical attempts to elongate the vocal folds

One of the earliest procedures reported for elevation of vocal pitch is a cricothyroid approximation, or type 4 thyroplasty, initially developed in the 1970s. In this surgery, the vocal folds are placed under permanent increased tension, using sutures that approximate the front aspect of the thyroid cartilage to the cricoid ring. A year-long longitudinal report of 11 patients (only 1 of whom was transgender) who underwent this procedure showed initial promise immediately postop.[24] However, while pitch did remain elevated at one year, it was lower in comparison to the postop pitch, and it was theorized that the vocal chronic vocal tension resulted in stretching of the tissue with relaxation or that the sutures pulled

through the cartilage. This has led to proposed modifications to the originally described procedure, either by altering the method of suture placement,[25] or by scarifying the thyroid to the cricoid.[26] Other case series have found similar results of initial improvement with benefits that wane over time.

Other attempts to permanently elongate the vocal folds to increase tension have resulted in similar outcomes.[27,28] These modifications have proposed pulling the anterior aspect of the vocal folds forward without fixing the cricoid to the thyroid. The theorized advantage is that the patient would be able to further modulate pitch. However, this has not been the outcome and the results are variable when the patients are followed long-term.

Surgeries to reduce vocal fold mass and length

In 1982, Donald et al [29] proposed surgery to reduce the size of the vocal folds, and create a web between the anterior portion of the vocal folds, by opening the larynx, removing the front third of the vocal folds and suturing the larynx closed. This surgery has the advantage of being able to be combined with procedures to reduce the prominence of the larynx in the neck.[30] Though the length of follow-up is not noted, Donald reported on successful pitch elevation and patient satisfaction in 3 patients. The procedure has been modified by other surgeons, and combined with shortening of the pharynx by bringing the larynx and the hyoid bone closure together. In a series of 94 patients (74 of whom were followed for approximately 1 year or more), these authors reported an average elevation of pitch from 139 Hz preoperatively to 196 Hz postoperatively. Complications were relatively rare and transient.[31] While promising, the results were somewhat unpredictable in terms of overall vocal quality and vocal range. In addition, while the surgery is generally well tolerated, it does place the airway at risk and require an external incision in the anterior neck skin.

Surgeries to increase tension by producing scar on the vocal folds

As previously mentioned, vocal fold vibration rate, which determines the pitch of the voice, is affected by vocal fold mass (as the mass decreases, the vibration rate or pitch increases) and tension (as the tension increases the vibration and pitch increases). This has led surgeons to attempt to elevate pitch by increasing tension through scarring the surface of the vocal folds or scarring the front portion of the vocal folds together to shorten the portion available for vibration. The main advantage of these types of procedures is that they can be done through the mouth without an incision in the neck, are well tolerated, and do no place the patient's breathing at significant risk. The main disadvantage is that healing and scar production can be unpredictable and results variable.

The initial reports of this type of surgery were present by Wendler in 1989.[32] The procedure, which has come to be known as the Wendler glottoplasty, is relatively easy to perform. The mucosa or skin from the front aspect of the vocal folds is removed. This can be done with either a CO2 laser, or with traditional non-powered instruments; the front aspect of the vocal folds is then sutured together. Variations on this procedure have replicated results in multiple small patient series from other centers.[12,22,33,34] In general, the vocal fold pitch is significantly elevated, but the overall pitch range and vocal loudness levels are reduced. In all patients, there is a modest increase in degree of vocal roughness postoperatively, and this is more noticeable when the procedure is performed in patients over 50 years of age. The procedure can also be repeated if healing does not result in as much scar as desired, and can be performed in patients who have failed other types of surgery.[35]

Finally, some surgeons have attempted to create scar on the top/superior surface of the vocal folds, either as a separate procedure [36] or as an adjunct to Wendler glottoplasty.[37] These attempts have not been shown to produce reliable results or benefits over glottoplasty alone, and are likely best avoided.

Voice masculinization

Far fewer transgender males present for voice evaluation and treatment than transgender females. This may be related to the reduction in pitch that transgender males experience as a result of hormone therapy.[38,39] As a result, the need for voice therapy for transgender men may be underestimated.[40] The hormone induced pitch change is not always without problems and it remains unclear if it is in all cases sufficient for the speaker to be identified as male.[38,39] Research supports that voice and communication should be targeted in voice therapy.[2,5,40-42]

Pitch

With hormone therapy, final lowered pitch is achieved sometime after 1 year. Following response to this treatment, it is reported that about 75% of trans men are identified as male by telephone.[42] This leaves 1 in 4 transgender men who may not be perceived vocally as male. The perceived masculinity of voice is related not only to pitch but also to the proximity of the habitual speaking pitch to the pitch floor, or lowest pitch.[5] Following behavioral intervention with a speech pathologist, it was demonstrated that speaking pitch decreased by an additional 35Hz and pitch instability and voice fatigue resolved.[40]

Resonance

Increased 'chest resonance' is suggested as a goal in voice therapy.[2] Achieving balanced resonance during voice production contributes to overall vocal efficiency and may play a

role in the reported improvement in voice complaints for trans men following voice therapy. These changes in resonance are further supported by data showing a change in formant frequencies (the acoustic correlate of resonance) during the first year of hormone treatment in conjunction with behavioral intervention.[5]

Intonation

In one study, there were no significant differences in overall intonation patterns observed between 4 gender groups (12 non-transgender males, 12 non-transgender females, 6 transgender men, 14 transgender women). However, transgender women who were misidentified as male had fewer upward and more downward intonation patterns than females and transgender females who were correctly identified.[16] Decreasing pitch variation, while avoiding monotonicity is suggested for trans men.[2]

Intensity

Vocal intensity in trans males is not well documented in the research literature. However, if increasing breathiness [9,17] and using lower vocal intensity [13,17] contributes to voice feminization, it may be considered that reducing breathiness and avoiding a soft voice may be perceived as more masculine.

While pitch is primarily addressed through hormone therapy and secondarily by voice therapy, the other components of voice production are primarily addressed through behavioral voice therapy.

Flow phonation and resonant voice therapy are two common voice therapy techniques. Flow phonation targets the balanced exhalation of airflow during voice production using respiration as the power source to achieve vocal efficiency. Resonant voice therapy focuses on achieving easy phonation while experiencing the energy or vibration of sound in the oral cavity.[19] The combination of these techniques can work to maximize voice production targeting pitch, resonance, intonation and intensity for trans men; efficacy data is needed to support this.

Some transmasculine spectrum people seek only some voice masculinization, and desire flexibility with their voice and communication.[5] While the literature supports the role of voice therapy for voice masculinization,[40,41] this is an area that needs further attention. With this in mind, voice therapy should be patient specific and physiologically based to achieve patient and therapy goals in a vocally efficient and safe manner.

Effects of testosterone hormone therapy on voice

90% of trans men will achieve acceptable voice results, lowering of pitch into a gender neutral or male range, after 4 to 5 months of taking exogenous androgens.[38] In multiple

reports of small series, the average speaking pitch dropped for a female range of 190- 200 Hz to an acceptable male range of 100 to 140Hz.[5,43] However, while lowered pitch occurs as a consequence of thickening of the tissues due to the effects of androgens, in some cases male speaking patterns must be learned through behavioral therapy. 10% of patients or more will have some difficulty during transition either due to inability to produce efficient vocalizations with the altered laryngeal apparatus, or an inability to naturally adopt male speaking patterns.[44] These patients usually respond to counseling with a certified speech-language pathologist who has experience in managing individuals with transgender voice issues.

Surgical consideration

As hormonal therapies and behavioral therapies are effective in helping 90% of transgender men achieve acceptable voice, surgical intervention is rarely indicated in this group. If needed, however, relaxation thyroplasty, designed to reduce the tension of the vocal folds can be performed. This same surgery is used in male patients with inappropriately elevated pitch and results in a reduction of pitch if performed in the original method [45] and an even greater reduction if modified as described by other authors. Typical pitch reduction is in the range of 100 Hz and usually results in the patient attaining an acceptable male vocal pitch. However, as the vocal cord tension is less controllable after the intervention, the voice is often perceived as more rough and with less volume.[46]

References

1. Davies S, Goldberg JM. Clinical aspects of transgender speech feminization and masculinization. Int J Transgenderism. 2006 Sep 1;9(3-4):167-96.
2. Thornton J. Working with the transgender voice: The role of the speech and language therapist. Sexologies. 2008 Oct;17(4):271-6.
3. Coleman E, Bockting W, Botzer M, Cohen-Kettenis P, DeCuypere G, Feldman J, et al. Standards of Care for the Health of Transsexual, Transgender, and Gender-Nonconforming People, Version 7. Int J Transgenderism. 2012;13(4):165-232.
4. Carew L, Dacakis G, Oates J. The effectiveness of oral resonance therapy on the perception of femininity of voice in male-to-female transsexuals. J Voice. 2007 Sep;21(5):591-603.
5. Davies S, Papp VG, Antoni C. Voice and communication change for gender nonconforming individuals: Giving Voice to the Person Inside. Int J Transgenderism. 2015 Jul 3;16(3):117-59.

6. Byrne LA, Dacakis G, Douglas JM. Self-perceptions of pragmatic communication abilities in male-to-female transsexuals. Adv Speech Lang Pathol. 2003 Jan 1;5(1):15-25.

7. Dacakis G. The role of voice therapy in male-to-female transsexuals. Curr Opin Otolaryngol Head Neck Surg. 2002 Jun;10(3):173-7.

8. Dacakis G, Davies S, Oates JM, Douglas JM, Johnston JR. Development and preliminary evaluation of the transsexual voice questionnaire for male-to-female transsexuals. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 2013 May;27(3):312-20.

9. Gorham-Rowan M, Morris R. Aerodynamic analysis of male-to-female transgender voice. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 2006 Jun;20(2):251-62.

10. King RS, Brown GR, McCrea CR. Voice parameters that result in identification or misidentification of biological gender in male-to-female transgender veterans. Int J Transgenderism. 2012 May 1;13(3):117-30.

11. Adler RK, Hirsch S, Mordaunt M. Voice and communication therapy for the transgender/transsexual client: a comprehensive clinical guide. Plural Publishing; 2012. 577 p.

12. Casado JC, O'Connor C, Angulo MS, Adrián JA. Wendler glottoplasty and voice-therapy in male-to-female transsexuals: results in pre and post-surgery assessment. Acta Otorrinolaringol Esp(link is external). 2015 May [cited 2016 Mar 18];

13. Holmberg EB, Oates J, Dacakis G, Grant C. Phonetograms, aerodynamic measurements, self-evaluations, and auditory perceptual ratings of male-to-female transsexual voice. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 2010 Sep;24(5):511-22.

14. Gelfer MP, Schofield KJ. Comparison of acoustic and perceptual measures of voice in male-to-female transsexuals perceived as female versus those perceived as male. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 2000 Mar;14(1):22-33.

15. Hancock AB, Garabedian LM. Transgender voice and communication treatment: a retrospective chart review of 25 cases. Int J Lang Commun Disord R Coll Speech Lang Ther. 2013 Jan;48(1):54-65.

16. Hancock A, Colton L, Douglas F. Intonation and gender perception: applications for transgender speakers. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 2014 Mar;28(2):203-9.

17. Oates J, Dacakis G. Transgender voice and communication: research evidence underpinning voice intervention for male-to-female transsexual women. Perspect Voice Voice Disord. 2015 Jul 1;25(2):48.

18. Gelfer MP, Van Dong BR. A preliminary study on the use of vocal function exercises to improve voice in male-to-female transgender clients. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 2013 May;27(3):321-34.

19. Verdolini K. Resonant voice therapy. In: Voice Therapy: Clinical Studies. San Diego, CA: Singular; 2000. p. 46-61.

20. Stemple JC, Lee L, D'Amico B, Pickup B. Efficacy of vocal function exercises as a method of improving voice production. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 1994 Sep;8(3):271-8.

21. Gelfer MP, Tice RM. Perceptual and acoustic outcomes of voice therapy for male-to-female transgender individuals immediately after therapy and 15 months later. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 2013 May;27(3):335-47.

22. Anderson JA. Pitch elevation in transgendered patients: anterior glottic web formation assisted by temporary injection augmentation. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 2014 Nov;28(6):816-21.

23. Edgerton MT. The surgical treatment of male transsexuals. Clin Plast Surg. 1974 Apr;1(2):285-323.

24. Isshiki N, Taira T, Tanabe M. Surgical alteration of the vocal pitch. J Otolaryngol. 1983 Oct;12(5):335-40.

25. Lee S, Liao T, Hsieh T. Extralaryngeal approach in functional phonosurgery. Tokyo; 1986 p. 482-3.

26. Sataloff RT. Professional voice: the science and art of clinical care. 2nd ed. San Diego, CA: Singular Publishing Group; 1997.

27. LeJeune FE, Guice CE, Samuels PM. Early experiences with vocal ligament tightening. Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol. 1983 Oct;92(5 Pt 1):475-7.

28. Tucker HM. Anterior commissure laryngoplasty for adjustment of vocal fold tension. Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol. 1985 Dec;94(6 Pt 1):547-9.

29. Donald PJ. Voice change surgery in the transsexual. Head Neck Surg. 1982 Jun;4(5):433-7.

30. Kunachak S, Prakunhungsit S, Sujjalak K. Thyroid cartilage and vocal fold reduction: a new phonosurgical method for male-to-female transsexuals. Ann Otol Rhinol Laryngol. 2000 Nov;109(11):1082-6.

31. Thomas JP, Macmillan C. Feminization laryngoplasty: assessment of surgical pitch elevation. Eur Arch Oto-Rhino-Laryngol Off J Eur Fed Oto-Rhino-Laryngol Soc EUFOS Affil Ger Soc Oto-Rhino-Laryngol - Head Neck Surg. 2013 Sep;270(10):2695-700.

32. Proceedings of the Union of the European Phoniatricians. 1989; Salsomaggiore, Italy.

33. Gross M. Pitch-raising surgery in male-to-female transsexuals. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 1999 Jun;13(2):246-50.

34. Remacle M, Matar N, Morsomme D, Veduyckt I, Lawson G. Glottoplasty for male-to-female transsexualism: voice results. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 2011 Jan;25(1):120-3.

35. Mastronikolis NS, Remacle M, Biagini M, Kiagiadaki D, Lawson G. Wendler glottoplasty: an effective pitch raising surgery in male-to-female transsexuals. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 2013 Jul;27(4):516-22.

36. Orloff LA, Mann AP, Damrose JF, Goldman SN. Laser-assisted voice adjustment (LAVA) in transsexuals. The Laryngoscope. 2006 Apr;116(4):655-60.

37. Geneid A, Rihkanen H, Kinnari TJ. Long-term outcome of endoscopic shortening and stiffening of the vocal folds to raise the pitch. Eur Arch Oto-Rhino-Laryngol Off J Eur Fed Oto-Rhino-Laryngol Soc EUFOS Affil Ger Soc Oto-Rhino-Laryngol - Head Neck Surg. 2015 Dec;272(12):3751-6.

38. Cosyns M, Van Borsel J, Wierckx K, Dedecker D, Van de Peer F, Daelman T, et al. Voice in female-to-male transsexual persons after long-term androgen therapy. The Laryngoscope. 2014 Jun 1;124(6):1409-14.

39. Azul D. Transmasculine people's vocal situations: a critical review of gender-related discourses and empirical data. Int J Lang Commun Disord. 2015 Jan 1;50(1):31-47.

40. Söderpalm E, Larsson A, Almquist S-Å. Evaluation of a consecutive group of transsexual individuals referred for vocal intervention in the west of Sweden. Logoped Phoniatr Vocol. 2004 Mar 1;29(1):18-30.

41. McNeill EJM. Management of the transgender voice. J Laryngol Otol. 2006 Jul;120(07):521-3.

42. Dahl M, Feldman J, Goldberg JM, Jaberi A, Bockting WO, Knudson G. Endocrine therapy for transgender adults in British Columbia: suggested guidelines. Vanc BC Vanc Coast Health Auth Dep Public Health Retrieved January. 2006;1:2005.

43. Damrose EJ. Quantifying the impact of androgen therapy on the female larynx. Auris Nasus Larynx. 2009 Feb;36(1):110-2.
44. Van Borsel J, De Cuypere G, Rubens R, Destaerke B. Voice problems in female-to-male transsexuals. Int J Lang Commun Disord R Coll Speech Lang Ther. 2000 Sep;35(3):427-42.
45. Nakamura K, Tsukahara K, Watanabe Y, Komazawa D, Suzuki M. Type 3 thyroplasty for patients with mutational dysphonia. J Voice Off J Voice Found. 2013 Sep;27(5):650-4.
46. Hoffman MR, Devine EE, Remacle M, Ford CN, Wadium E, Jiang JJ. Combined type IIIB with bilateral type I thyroplasty for pitch lowering with maintenance of vocal fold tension. Eur Arch Oto-Rhino-Laryngol Off J Eur Fed Oto-Rhino-Laryngol Soc EUFOS Affil Ger Soc Oto-Rhino-Laryngol - Head Neck Surg. 2014 Jun;271(6):1621-9.

Health insurance

Introduction

Insurance plans issued in the United States since the 1980s routinely contained broadly written exclusions prohibiting payment for care related to "transsexualism," "sex change treatments," "gender identity disorders," or "transgender care." In some cases providers or clinic administrators, as well as claims administrators within insurance companies, would interpret these exclusionary statements in the broadest possible terms, assuming that transgender people could not receive medical care. The burden of fighting against this level of adversity when people are physically ill or injured represents a significant barrier to care. This adversity has contributed to the high incidence of transgender people avoiding seeking needed health care.[1]

Complexities of insurance and health benefits plans

Insurance policies are regulated by each of the 50 U.S. states; therefore, for example, an Anthem Blue Cross policy issued in one state may be very different in content from a policy issued by the same carrier in another state, though the plans may appear at first to be equivalent. Further, many people with private insurance in the U.S. receive coverage through their employer, and many large employers are able to negotiate their coverage to include or exclude specific care. These are "health benefits plans" and are not "insurance plans" strictly speaking, although they may appear the same to the enrolled member. Often referred to as "ERISA plans," (in some cases referred to as "self-insured" plans) such health benefits plans are usually regulated under the federal Employee Retirement Income Security Act of 1974), These ERISA plans are issued and administered by the same

insurance companies that offer individual or small group plans, but the employer pays the direct costs of all care. As such ERISA plans have greater flexibility in what is covered, depending on the mission and intentions of the employer. In non-ERISA plans (in some cases referred to as a "fully funded" plan), the insurance company assumes the risk that the individual or group will not cost them more than the premium and co-pays will bring in. Being further removed from an incentive (i.e. covered employee recruitment and retention), non-ERISA plans may be less nimble in adding coverages or responding to case-by-case scenarios.

Although plans insured by or administered by a given carrier (e.g., Aetna, United Health, Anthem BCBS, et cetera) are often very different from each other, there are also often similarities in approach as carriers strive to standardize internal processes. Most carriers have now issued their own internal guidelines specific to transgender-related healthcare, especially surgical interventions. These guidelines (called by various names such as medical policies or coverage positions) spell out what services will be covered for a specific medical condition and usually apply to all insurance products issued by a carrier. However, they may not apply to some ERISA-regulated health benefits plans since large employers have the ability to negotiate medical guidelines specific to their own employee health plans.

Thus, what is covered by a given health plan will vary not only by state but also by employer. Some large companies choose to offer transgender health benefits under their ERISA plan in order, for example, to maximize their talent recruitment, to provide a just and equitable workplace, or to control healthcare costs by providing the services people need. These large employers have chosen to implement medical guidelines that offer increased access, such as coverage of a greater range of medically necessary services. Smaller businesses, which depend on the insurance company to assume the risk (and whose risk is combined with other small employers), may not have the leverage to negotiate inclusion of transgender health benefits. However, smaller employers can inquire with their carrier representative as to feasibility and per-member, per-month costs of doing so, since coverage is becoming increasingly common across the country.

Gaining coverage: changing the paradigm

From the 1960s through the 1990s, some very persistent Individuals, often with support from their health care providers, were able to secure benefits payments, in certain instances. However, systemic reform did not begin until the 2000s, after advocates were able to convince the City and County of San Francisco to eliminate exclusions in at least one of the five plans City and County employees could select from for their health care coverage. Utilization data from the first five years showed that there was little or no

increase in plan cost when medically necessary gender affirming care was included in a large group plan. These results were used to inform the inclusion of transgender health benefits in the Human Rights Campaign's Corporate Equality Index, an instrument devised to grade companies on their approach to LGBT employee and customer relations.[2]

Private and public insurance reform

As of 2015, an increasing number of employers are offering transgender-inclusive health benefits plans, and insurance Commissioners in numerous states and the District of Columbia have issued regulations prohibiting the sale of insurance plans that discriminate against transgender people.[3] Further, on May 30, 2014, the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services issued a ruling that Medicare's longstanding exclusion of "transsexual surgical procedures" was no longer valid, leaving the provision of services up to local coverage determinations.[4] Following suit, some states have begun to revise their Medicaid plans to offer transgender-inclusive health care.[5] Specific Medicaid policies can be obtained from individual state Medicaid regulatory agencies. Currently (as of 2015) the Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) is in the process of developing a new National Coverage Determination with regards to inclusion of gender affirming care in the Medicare program. Private health insurance products are often regulated by the State Department of Insurance or Department of Managed Care (department nomenclature may differ by state); specific policies and coverage details can be obtained from individual state agencies.

Claim denials for sex-specific procedures

In some automated systems, if for example the patient is designated as "female" in the electronic record (EMR), and a treatment or procedure code is entered for care that is exclusively covered for bodies designated male [e.g., prostatic ultrasound]), that claim may be automatically rejected. The reverse would be true for someone designated as "male" in the EMR but who requires care that is exclusively covered for bodies designated "female." If the patient's plan document or individual state regulations provide that transgender care is covered (or that care may not be restricted on the basis of sex), then the patient may need support from the physician's office to inform the carrier or administrator that the patient is transgender, and that this claim cannot be rejected. If there is no provision for transgender care in this instance, it will be necessary for the provider to appeal to the carrier for coverage of the specific treatment or diagnosis.

Overriding a "sex mismatch": condition code 45

All federally-funded health institutions (e.g., most hospitals) have received instruction on the use of Code 45 (and the KX modifier) in their coding practices and all Medicare

Administrative Contractors are required to process this code,[6] which is an override for a sex mismatch. However, the code may not have been implemented by all hospitals or carriers' systems; in these cases using Code 45 may result in a returned claim for correction, or outright denial of the claim.

Discrimination claims

The Office for Civil Rights of the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS) has already issued guidance that preventive services may not be denied simply on the basis of sex, resulting for example in CDC coverage of mammograms for transgender women. In May 2015, CMS issued sub-regulatory guidance clarifying that preventive services are available under the Affordable Care Act (ACA) regardless of an individual's gender identity, sex assigned at birth, or recorded gender. Section 2713 of the Public Health Service Act, as amended by the ACA, requires most health plans to cover certain preventive services, regardless of gender.[7,8] Over time resolution of other sex-gender "mismatch" problems is expected to evolve as a result of new regulations guiding the implementation of non-discrimination provisions based on sex, contained in Section 1557 of the Affordable Care Act (forthcoming from the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services, HHS).[7] In the meantime, those who experience denials on the basis of sex-gender mismatches for sex-specific services are encouraged to file complaints with HHS Office for Civil Rights.[8]

Claims denials and discrimination

Many transgender people experience denials of their claims for transgender transition-specific services. Many more never receive a formal denial because their plan contains transgender-specific exclusions and the physician never files paperwork for prior authorization for such services. Many call their insurance carrier and are told services will not be covered, and on that basis never attempt to file a claim. Transgender individuals and their health providers should be aware that unless a denial is in writing, it is not a denial and cannot be appealed. More importantly, transgender individuals with well-documented claims are increasingly achieving success in their appeals. Individuals are encouraged to work proactively with their medical providers to ensure that appeals documents include individualized, extensive documentation of the necessity and appropriateness of services. Such appeals should also include a comprehensive and detailed overview of the process of gender transition, including the role of and evidence in support of the specific services requested. In addition to providing a background to uninformed reviewers, such comprehensive documentation conveys the individual's intent to pursue the appeals to the final stages, which can be quite persuasive.

Over time resolution of these problems is expected to evolve as a result of new regulations guiding the implementation of non-discrimination provisions based on sex, which will be issued by HHS in the coming months.[9] In the meantime, individuals whose health plans contain provisions which discriminate on the basis of sex, including transgender-specific exclusions, are encouraged to file complaints with the HHS Office for Civil Rights.[8] While not every health plan in the U.S. is currently regulated under Section 1557 of the ACA, the ACA does specify that the Essential Health Benefits they are required to provide must also not discriminate on the basis of sex.

Table 1. Available health coverage in the U.S.

Coverage Type	General Characteristics and Caveats
ACA/Exchange Plans	Affordable Care Act coverage for individuals and families who are not eligible Medicare, and who do not have insurance coverage through their employer, c employed. Until HHS implements Section 1557, only states with laws forbidd discrimination against transgender people in insurance products are likely to transgender-inclusive plans available. To see if your state is one of these, che information on health coverage at the National Center for Trans Equality(link or the Transgender Law Center(link is external) websites.[11] However, even i currently prohibiting transgender exclusions in insurance plans, some or all r plans may still retain exclusions.
Employer Plans, Fully-Funded (ERISA)	These are group plans available to small businesses, and sometimes may inc offered to qualified individuals. Fully-funded means that purchaser of the pla premium to fund the cost of services provided by medical providers and by th company. Insurance companies often aggregate these plans to reduce their r similar customers; if a small employer could find out who else was in their "p be able to convince the other companies to also ask for a policy change to m transgender-inclusive. However, aggregate group composition is not public in allowing insurers to control variables to maintain profit margins. These plans state regulation, so their terms may vary by state. To see if your state is one o for the latest information on health coverage at the National Center for Trans external) or the Transgender Law Center(link is external) websites.

Table 1. Available health coverage in the U.S.

Coverage Type	General Characteristics and Caveats
Employer Plans, Self-Insured (non-ERISA)	These are group plans that are administered by insurance companies, using of provider networks and claim processing mechanisms as their other plans, employer pays ALL the costs themselves, and thus the employer bears all th plans are exempt from state regulation by the federal ERISA regulations, whic employer/customers of the plans much more leeway to request the features levels that they want, including transgender-specific care. Some of these pla own internal medical guidelines that provide for coverage of all services med for transition.
Health Maintenance Organizations (HMO)	These state-regulated organizations provide both the insurance coverage and services that they cover. In some cases, available services may not include t specific care, but many HMOs are working hard to provide competent trans-s As of December 2015, thirteen states including the District of Columbia have transgender exclusions (note a prohibition on exclusions is not the same as r inclusion) in these health plans, with implementation varying by state. Indivi information is available at National Center for Trans Equality(link is external) Law Center(link is external).
Medicaid	These are state-run (partially funded by federal money) safety net programs t payment to providers who will accept the amount the program is willing to pa less than private insurance will pay). Medicaid provides coverage for qualifie people, families and children, pregnant women, the elderly, and people with Some states are starting to remove exclusions for trans-specific care from th plans. To see if your state is one of these, check for the latest information on at the National Center for Trans Equality(link is external) or the Transgender L is external) websites.

Table 1. Available health coverage in the U.S.

Coverage Type	General Characteristics and Caveats
Medicare	This is the federal program that covers people over 65 years old, and disable age 65. HHS ruled in May 2014 that blanket exclusions for "transsexual surge longer appropriate because the medical evidence exists to show that such c delivered appropriately, is effective, and it is no longer experimental surgery, cosmetic." Currently coverage is available through Local Coverage Determin by-case basis.
Railroad Medicare	Under this program, people who worked for railroads for at least 10 years ma Medicare Part B services at favorable rates through the railroad-specified ad Transgender-specific services may be available according to Local Coverage (LCDs) through the Center for Medicare and Medicaid Serves (CMS).
TRICARE	This is the health benefit administration program for U.S. active duty military members and their dependents and retirees who are not eligible for Medicar specific services are not available while transgender people are not permitte openly in the military. This policy may change in mid-2016.
Union Plans	Some labor unions, in some states, may have transgender-inclusive policies check with the union's benefits office/department. Several labor unions have the national level calling for the elimination of transgender exclusions. Altho on member unions, these may help union members fight for benefits equity.
Veteran's Administration	Transgender Veterans may obtain regular medical care, including hormone t Transgender-specific surgical procedures are currently restricted or prohibite may change as the U.S. military considers the role of transgender service me

References

1. Grant JM, Mottet LA, Tanis J, Harrison J, Herman J, Keisling M. Injustice at every turn: a report of the National Transgender Discrimination Survey(link is external). National Center for Transgender Equality and National Gay and Lesbian Task Force; 2011 [cited 2016 Mar 17].
2. Herman JL. Costs and Benefits of Providing Transition-related Health Care Coverage in Employee Health Benefits Plans: Findings from a Survey of Employers(link is external). eScholarship. 2013 Sep 1 [cited 2016 Mar 24];
3. Green J. Transsexual surgery may be covered by medicare. LGBT Health. 2014 Dec;1(4):256-8.
4. National Center for Transgender Equality. Healthcare Rights and Transgender People. National Center for Transgender Equality: Know Your Rights; Healthcare(link is external). 2014 [cited 2016 Mar 24].
5. Center for Medicare and Medicaid Services (CMS) and Medicare Learning Network (MLN).MLN Matters® Number MM6917: Instructions Regarding the Processing of Inpatient Claims for Gender/Procedure Conflict(link is external). MLN Matters: Information for Medicare Fee-for-Service Health Care Professionals; 2010 [cited 2016 Mar 24].
6. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS): Office for Civil Rights (OCR). Nondiscrimination in Health Programs and Activities Proposed Rule - Section 1557 of the Affordable Care Act(link is external). HHS.gov. 2015 [cited 2016 Mar 24].
7. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS): Office for Civil Rights (OCR). Filing with OCR(link is external). Filing with OCR. HHS.gov. 2015 [cited 2016 Mar 24].
8. Office for Civil Rights (OCR). Section 1557 - Summary(link is external). HHS.gov. 2015 [cited 2016 Mar 24].
9. National Center for Transgender Equality(link is external) . National Center for Transgender Equality. [cited 2016 Mar 24].
10. Transgender Law Center | Making Authentic Lives Possible(link is external). [cited 2016 Mar 24].

Legal and Identity Documents

The concept of a "legal sex" is complex, though for simplicity the term will be used in this discussion. The World Professional Association for Transgender Health advocates a simple

administrative procedure to change legal identity documents to match experienced gender.[1] While self-determination of legal gender is the law in a small (but growing) number of countries, including Argentina, Denmark, Malta, and Ireland, most countries require the involvement of health professionals, if legal "change of sex" is possible at all.[2]

Under United States federal law, and in some states, surgery is not required to change legal sex, but a health professional must certify that their patient has undergone "necessary" medical or psychological treatment for transition.[3] In completing this paperwork, the health professional should be aware that there is no particular clinical treatment (such as hormones or surgery) that is "necessary" for all trans people, and that legal documents reflecting a sex congruent with one's gender identity contribute to a patient's health, by supporting employment, safe travel, and other necessities of daily living, as well as facilitating access to medical care.

In some jurisdictions, there is a surgical requirement to change legal sex. The health provider may have leeway, depending on the law, as there is no particular surgery that is "necessary" for all trans people. Some trans people are unable to change their birth certificate in their home state or country, but may still change their gender markers on their U.S. passport, Social Security card, and driver's license.[4]

Transgender people may encounter a conflict between their legal sex and sex-specific medical care, such as screening for cervical cancer or prostatic disease. While state laws may vary, in some cases it may be necessary for the provider to contact the insurance company and explain the specific circumstances in the case of a sex-specific denial. Once legal documents have been changed, patients should be sure to update their legal name and sex with their insurance company and medical provider to prevent a denial based on a mismatch of information.

Legal change of name is not a gendered process in many, but not all jurisdictions; in most jurisdictions the name change process for transgender people is identical to that for non-transgender people.

- U.S. Department of State guidelines for passports [5](link is external)
- U.S. Social Security Administration guidelines [6](link is external)

The National Center for Transgender Equality maintains a resource center(link is external) with links to guidelines for changing identification documents in each U.S. state [3].

Information on changing gender identity documents in Europe can be found at TGEU: Transgender Europe(link is external).

References

1. WPATH Public Policy Committee, Green J. WPATH Statement on Legal Recognition of Gender Identity (link is external).2015 [cited 2016 Mar 24].
2. The Open Society Foundations, Byrne J. License to be Yourself: Laws and advocacy for legal gender recognition of trans people(link is external). New York, NY; 2014 May [cited 2016 Mar 24].
3. National Center for Transgender Equality. ID Documents Center(link is external). National Center for Transgender Equality. 2016 [cited 2016 Mar 24].
4. Lambda Legal.Resources for Changing Your Documents(link is external). Lambda Legal: Know Your Rights. [cited 2016 Mar 24].
5. U.S. Department of State; Bureau of Consular Affairs. Gender Transition Applicants(link is external). U.S. Passports and International Travel. [cited 2016 Mar 24].
6. U.S. Social Security Administration. Program Operations Manual System (POMS): RM 10212.200 - Changing Numident Data for Reasons other than Name Change(link is external). Official Social Security Website. 2013 [cited 2016 Mar 24].
7. (TGEU)(link is external) Transgender Europe. [cited 2016 Mar 24].

Sex-Segregated Systems

A guiding principle in sex-segregated systems is to give people the autonomy to use the facilities and programs most aligned with their gender identity. This includes using restroom facilities, inpatient and residential beds, and locker rooms concordant with experienced gender (Grading: X C S). When available and preferred by the individual, non-gendered facilities can be utilized, but services should not be dependent on their availability.

The legal right to access to programs according to gender identity has expanded with recent state and federal regulation. Schools are required to allow students to use facilities and programs concordant with their gender identity, under the laws of some states, including California.[1] Under California law, students should be able to choose facilities according to their gender identity, or to use a private facility. Students should be able to participate in athletic programs and facilities according to gender identity. Students should be referred to according to preferred name and pronoun, and be listed according to gender identity in data systems. The Department of Education, under Title IX, has ruled that the students must be able to use programs and facilities according to their identity.[2]

The U.S. Department of Health and Human Services now requires shelters and other housing programs to provide housing and other accommodations and services to trans people according to their gender identity.[3]

WPATH SOC 7 addresses the care of people in institutional environments, stating that all aspects of transition care should be available to people living in institutions, and states that sex segregation by external genitalia may be inappropriate and place trans people at risk for victimization.[4]

References

1. California School Boards Association (CSBA). Final Guidance: AB1266, Transgender and Gender Nonconforming Students, Privacy, Programs, Activities and Facilities. 2014 Mar [cited 2016 Mar 25].
2. U.S. Department of Education; Office for Civil Rights. Questions and Answers on Title IX and Single-Sex Elementary and Secondary Classes and Extracurricular Activities. 2014 [cited 2016 Mar 25].
3. U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD). FR-5863-P-01 Equal Access in Accordance With an Individual's Gender Identity in Community Planning and Development Programs. Regulations.gov - Proposed Rule Document. 2016 [cited 2016 Mar 25].
4. World Professional Association for Transgender Health (WPATH)(link is external). Standards of care for the health of transsexual, transgender, and gender nonconforming people, 7th Version. WPATH; 2012 [cited 2016 Mar 10].

Homelessness

Introduction

One fifth of transgender people surveyed in the National Transgender Discrimination Survey reported experiencing homelessness. Homelessness frequently resulted from fleeing intolerant family, being forced out by family, by losing a job due to discrimination, or not being able to be employed due to discrimination and disability. In the same survey, of those who experienced homelessness, the majority of those trying to access a homeless shelter were harassed by shelter staff or residents (55%), 29% were turned away altogether, and 22% were sexually assaulted by residents or staff.[1] Many transgender individuals have found health care and social service providers to be ignorant about transgender issues and needs. It is essential that homeless service providers are well educated in this area as they are likely to encounter trans individuals.[2] The National Healthcare for the Homeless Clinicians Network has offered high quality trainings in this area.[2-4]

Assault and discrimination in public settings, especially homeless shelters, are frequently reported by homeless trans people.[5] While federal and other policies forbid discrimination,[6] many individuals are still unable to express their felt gender due to this discrimination, and best practices start with the collection of gender identity data in a confidential non-discriminatory manner, followed by an inquiry of housing preference if the shelter is sex segregated. Most individuals will prefer to be housed according to the gender in which they live or identify, however in some instances individuals may prefer to be housed based on their birth sex due to safety or other concerns. Best practice guidelines for shelters are now available.[7,8]

Functional disability is very common in homeless transgender individuals. Many homeless transgender individuals are unable to work due to disabilities. Gender dysphoria itself may lead to severe depression, anxiety, and suicidality.[9] Adverse childhood experiences, losses, and traumas may result in PTSD and other persistent problems. Physical assaults, alcohol and drug use may result in chronic physical conditions. Loss of educational opportunities and lack of job opportunities may result in poor capacity to learn and acquire new skills. These problems often cause long-term loss of capacity to work. Individuals may be eligible for social security disability, which may be their only way out of homelessness. Careful documentation of disability will be helpful for these individuals.[10]

Homelessness and gender affirming care

Hormone therapy and transgender surgeries are considered medically necessary (when desired) for the treatment of gender dysphoria. Homelessness has in some cases been used as a blanket exclusion for these medical services. In most cases individuals who need hormone therapy are highly motivated, and despite the stresses of homelessness are able to adhere to treatment and monitoring. Healthcare for the Homeless providers have successfully treated many patients with hormone therapy.[3] Homelessness is also not a contraindication for planning surgery for those patients who seek chest, breast, genital or other gender confirming procedures. The degree of housing stability required for successful outcomes for each of these surgeries will vary with the procedure and individual. Medical respite programs may have the capacity to allow some patients to recuperate from some surgeries. Since there is often a year or more waiting period from referral to surgery, this period is a time to intensively work on stabilization of housing status. The hope and promise of surgery is often a very strong motivator for individuals who were previously hopeless. Some patients may have unrealistic ideas about the rigor of surgery, recovery and aftercare or the possibility of their being stably housed. These individuals require intensive work with primary care providers, mental health providers, care navigators, and others to develop the stability needed for successful surgery outcomes. Care should be

taken during the education and preparation process prior to surgery to avoid creating the perception of caregivers' concerns about housing instability as discriminatory or as arbitrary "hoops to jump through."[11]

Prevention

Prevention of homelessness is dependent upon decreasing discrimination in family, work, and other social settings, and providing transgender individuals with equal opportunities. Assisting people who are unable to work to obtain disability entitlements is an important way out of homelessness. Prevention of the harms of homelessness can be accomplished by implementing best practices and educating homeless service providers. While substantial research has been initiated in this area [12,13] more research is needed to inform the development of best practices for implementing these changes.

References

1. Grant JM, Mottet LA, Tanis J, Harrison J, Herman J, Keisling M. Injustice at every turn: a report of the National Transgender Discrimination Survey(link is external). National Center for Transgender Equality and National Gay and Lesbian Task Force; 2011 [cited 2016 Mar 17].
2. O'Sullivan A, Apodaca E, Caughlan J, Roberts LC, Hale A, Hines L, et al. Crossing to Safety: Transgender Health & Homelessness. Healing Hands (A publication of the HCH Clinicians' Network). 2002 Jun [cited 2016 Mar 17];6(4).
3. Klein P, Wenzel C, Ammerman S, Aytch M. Practice Transformation: Improving Access to Care and Quality of Care for Unstably Housed Transgender and Gender-Nonconforming Persons. National HCH Conference; [cited 2016 Mar 17].
4. HCH Clinicians' Network. "Seeing People as They See Themselves": Health Care and Access for Transgender Individuals Experiencing Homelessness. Healing Hands. 2015 Winter [cited 2016 Mar 17];19(1).
5. Mottet L, Ohle J. Transitioning Our Shelters: Making Homeless Shelters Safe for Transgender People. J Poverty. 2006 May 22;10(2):77-101.
6. U.S. Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD). Appropriate Placement for Transgender Persons in Single-Sex Emergency Shelters and Other Facilities(link is external). 2015 Feb [cited 2016 Mar 17].
7. Massachusetts Transgender Political Coalition Policy Committee. Shelter for all genders: best practices for homeless shelters, services, and programs in

Massachusetts in serving transgender adults and gender non-conforming guests(link is external). 2013 [cited 2016 Mar 17].

8. The FTM Safer Shelter Project Research Team. Invisible Men: FTMs and Homelessness in Toronto(link is external). Wellesley Institute; 2008 Jun [cited 2016 Mar 17].
9. Clements-Nolle K, Marx R, Katz M. Attempted suicide among transgender persons: The influence of gender-based discrimination and victimization. J Homosex. 2006;51(3):53-69.
10. O'Connell JJ, Zevin BD, Quick PD, Anderson SF, Perret YM, Dalton M, et al. Documenting Disability: Simple Strategies for Medical Providers(link is external). Health Care for the Homeless Clinician's Network; 2007 Sep [cited 2016 Mar 17].
11. Deutsch MB. Gender-affirming surgeries in the era of insurance coverage: developing a framework for psychosocial support and care navigation in a perioperative period. J Health Care Poor Underserved. 2016;27:1-6.
12. National Health Care for the Homeless Council. Gender Minority & Homelessness: Transgender Population. Focus Q Res Rev Natl HCH Council. 2014 Aug [cited 2016 Mar 17];3(1).
13. Fletcher JB, Kisler KA, Reback CJ. Housing status and HIV risk behaviors among transgender women in Los Angeles. Arch Sex Behav. 2014 Nov;43(8):1651-61.